# Public Document Pack Sefton Council

MEETING: SCHOOLS FORUM

DATE: Monday 1 July 2019

TIME: 1.30 pm

VENUE: Formby Professional Development Centre, Park Road, Formby

#### Member

Councillor Ogden

Councillor Hands Nigel Bellamy Mike McSorley Brenda Porter Catherine Earley

Sue Clare Jon Horrocks Wendy Corless Mary Johnson Sharon Cowey Sue Kerwin

Isobel Macdonald-Davies

Danny Macreavy Bernie Coxon Malcolm Parry Simon Penney Niki Craddock Ian Raikes Matt Symes Mary Wall Nicola Walsh Jones

COMMITTEE OFFICER: Colette Jones

Clerk to Schools Forum

Telephone: 0151 934 3741

Fax:

E-mail: colette.jones@sefton.gov.uk

If you have any special needs that may require arrangements to facilitate your attendance at this meeting, please contact the Committee Officer named above, who will endeavour to assist.

This page is intentionally left blank

### AGENDA

1.	Agenda for Meeting 1st July 2019	(Pages 5 - 6)
	a) Apologies for Absence	
2.	Minutes of the Last Meeting	(Pages 7 - 10)
3.	Matters Arising	
4.	Agenda Item 4 Dedicated Schools Grant Outturn 2018 2019	(Pages 11 - 24)
5.	Agenda Item 5 DSG Central Schools Services Growth Funding 2019 2020	(Pages 25 - 30)
6.	Agenda Item 6 Proposals to change the Early Years sub group of Schools Forum	(Pages 31 - 36)
7.	Agenda item 7-Scheme for Financing and Fin Regs LA M Schools	(Pages 37 - 232)
8.	Agenda item 8-National Fair Funding Conference Notes (002)	(Pages 233 - 240)

## **Sefton Schools' Forum**

1 July 2018 at 1.30pm PDC, Formby

## **AGENDA**

		<u>Name</u>		
	Apologies	Chair		
For Approval	Minutes of the Last Meeting	Chair		
For Consultation	Matters arising from Minutes	Chair		
Ite	ems for Approval or Consultation / For Information O	nly		
For Information	Dedicated Schools Grant (DSG) Outturn 2018/19			
For Information	DSG Central Schools Services; Growth Funding 2019/20			
For Information	Proposals to change the Early Years sub group of Schools Forum			
For Consultation	Scheme for Financing Local Authority Maintained Schools and Schools Financial Regulations			
For information	Notes on the National Fair Funding Conference – Manchester 22 May 2019			
	AOB			
Date of next meeting 2019 at 1.30pm PDC Formby				

### Sefton Council

Agenda Item 2

#### **Sefton Schools Forum Minutes**

# Minutes of Sefton Schools' Forum Meeting Monday 11<sup>th</sup> March 2019 1.30pm PDC, Formby

**Forum Members present: - Dorothy Lee Ogden (Chair)**, Isobel Macdonald-Davies, Malcolm Parry Danny Macareavy, Anna James, Niki Craddock, Toni Oxton-Grant, Cathy Earley, Julian Ward, David Jones, Rob Rogers, Matt Symes

DfE-Carl Fagan

#### In attendance:

Colette Jones -	Clerk to Sefton Schools Forum	(CJ)
Mike McSorley -	Head of Education	(MM)
Nick Carbonaro-	Corporate Finance	(NC)
Kevin McBlain -	Corporate Finance	(KM)

Actions

#### **Apologies**

1 Ian Raikes, Jenny Taylor, Nicky Walsh, Sue Kerwin, Jon Horrocks

#### 2 <u>Minutes of the previous meeting</u>

Forum agreed the minutes from the previous meeting with the amendment of Early Years Outcomes Fund be changed to Early Years Sub Group

#### 3 <u>Matters arising from Minutes</u>

- (4) Facility Time-report has been superseded by current report and has been raised at both SASH and SAPH.
- (9) Early Years Sub Group has not met but will send an update at a future meeting. Linda McQueen, based in Localities will be taking this forward

#### 4 School Resource Management Self-assessment Tool

Carl Fagan from the DfE gave a presentation on School resource management: benchmarking and self-assessment. The toolkit is a starting point for discussion and not 'a silver bullet' it is similar to and a replacement of the Schools Financial Statement. The tool is designed to support schools to make a self-assessment of their use of resources and to provide a robust and consistent method to help schools and trusts identify where a school sits in the distribution of data across the sector; to identify reasons for that position; and to decide if changes in how resources are managed are required. Support notes are available online for dashboard and checklist. DfE will not ask schools if their schools balances are in the red but will ask academies if the toolkit has been completed if they are struggling.

Colette Jones to circulate presentation and attachment

https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/school-resource-management-self-assessment-tool

A question and answer session followed.

Q How does it not skew the outcomes?

A Does not take size into consideration and compares with all special schools in the area

# Q What about a primary with a Resource Unit and nursery how does that impact?

A Compared with all primaries but the DfE may change this

#### Q What about the impact on secondary schools?

A Data is based on size, FSM and region. Schools with Sixth forms are now included

#### Q Are nursery schools included?

A The focus is on the 4 to 16 group but Early Years Team use the same toolkit-this could be developed further

#### Q What about schools with SEN support?

A Schools should have discussions with the DfE to identify areas and understand the issues

#### 5 <u>Disapplication request to move funding from Schools Block to High Needs</u> Block

The request for funding was finally approved by the DfE in March 2019

Forum noted the decision of the Secretary of State.

#### 6 Early years replacement for the Sub Group Proposal

Over the last two years there has been a Early Years Schools Forum Sub Group and a 30hr Steering Group discussing issues related to the early years sectors. It is requested that Forum consider disbanding the Early Years Schools Forum Sub Group in favour of a new wider based group, similar to the former 30 hours Steering group which was disbanded last summer.

Cathy Earley to email contacts and arrange a meeting

In line with the Council's new Locality working, Forum broadly agreed to setting up a new Early Years Group with proper terms of reference and rules and procedures to be determined, and to commence in September 2019 at the start of the next Academic year. A further report on progress with recommendations will be submitted to Forum at a future meeting.

#### 7 Complementary Education Charges

Kevin McBlain outlined the details of the report and the small change to the charge for 2019/20 which will take effect on 1 April 2019.

In March 2018, a report was brought to Schools Forum which introduced a charge for Complementary Education (Comp Ed) to cover the additional costs borne by increasing numbers of pupil referrals to the service. The Service lies within the High Needs budgets. The charges were to be reviewed in a 9 to 12-month period.

Records show, the numbers have increased from 50/60 per annum since 2017 to 100 +referrals 2018/19. Numbers have remained high throughout 2018/19.

There has also been growing concern raised through Ofsted inspections around pupil attendances at school, and Headteachers have been raising issues around the speed at which data has been made available to them on their pupils attending Comp Ed teaching sessions. The manager of the Comp Ed services has suggested employing an Admin support officer to help address these concerns, which would also alleviate pressures within the Comp Ed Service, arising since the growth in pupil referrals. This would be at an additional cost to the current charges, which it is felt should continue into 2019/20.

The charges proposed for 2019/20 have been calculated with a small increase in tuition charges of 1.8% from £9.68 per hour to £9.87 wef 1 April 2019; and a

decrease in transport charges of -31% from £4.58 per hour to £3.16 per hour. The increase in tuition charges has been minimised, through the service manager's ongoing efforts to try to reduce costs over the last 12 months, but includes for recovery of the costs of an Admin support officer.

A further review of the charges will be made in 12 months' time. Some Members of Forum requested further information on the spread of schools using the service and the numbers of pupils they are referring. The manager of Comp Ed will be asked to make this information available.

#### 8 Scheme for Financing Schools

Sefton MBC is currently updating its Scheme in accordance with the latest updates from the DfE and will be consulting with schools around the document. The Scheme is focussed on the financial relationship between the Local Authority and it's maintained schools. A paper will be brought to Forum for approval at a future meeting.

#### 9 High Needs Review and Budget Outturn

Agenda Items 9 and 10 are linked.

Mike McSorley gave a presentation on the Better Outcomes for Children and Young People with special educational needs in Sefton - Sefton Special Educational Needs Review: October 2018 - January 2019. The presentation highlighted the trends, key issues and next steps. There has been no increase in SEN but a better understanding of SEN with children being identified at an earlier age. In the past statements only affected children from age 5 to 16 and the new EHCP reforms range from age 0 to 25, this has seen an increase in SEN numbers and consequently costs. Sefton has a different financial approach to other LA's in that it has High Needs Funding and EHCP but when added together Sefton is higher in spend compared to LA's both regionally and nationally.

There are four main categories for SEN and Autism appears to be the most prominent in terms of funding but is ranked fourth. This could be the result of not recording the main problem with the child to receive extra funding. Further analysis on the data is required.

There are 80 pupils costing the LA £4.1m per annum by attending specialist independent provision and this could be due to parental choice as stated in the code of practice. Post 16 budget also has an overspend of £500k. Sefton sends more pupils to out of borough provision compared to other LA's primarily because it's specialist provision is full. The Government have awarded Sefton and extra £562k but the expected overspend will be £1.9m and this will roll over to next financial year. It is expected that there will be an overspend in 19/20 of £2/3m for Sefton.

Sefton can no longer continue funding in the same manner. Edge Hill University are conducting a review of SEN which may assist in developing a strategic plan and could include the various options that have been proposed;

- Developing a banding system and allocating funding to each band
- High needs for only 2 academic years for improvement
- Decommission places in schools particularly independent provision
- High Needs funding seen as part of the process for an EHCP
- Build confidence in schools and parents to use mainstream schools eg if Sefton can reduce out of borough provision it can invest in mainstream schools
- Challenge parents opting for specialist provision eg winning cases at tribunal and mediation

Colette Jones will circulate the presentation

- Hatton Hill Primary School are trialling having SEN children in the same class with a teacher. This is more beneficial and cost effective
- Reduce transport costs with personal budgets and travel passes
- Schools employing a speech and language therapist and having Health meet the financial costs

#### 10 LGA High Needs Report

This report is not for circulation outside of Forum. The School Improvement Board has requested a paper to include information on Inclusion, SEN, Free school meals in geographical areas.

#### 11 State of Maintained Schools

At a quarter 2 of 2018/19 financial year there are 6 schools (1 nursery which will close in August 2019, 2 primary schools and 3 secondary schools) who are operating under a Notice of Concern as they are projected to be in a deficit balance situation in 2018/19 or have an agreed licensed deficit agreement with the Council. The main cause for the projected deficits; falling pupil numbers or in areas where there are more school places available. Plans are in place to reduce the deficits over time.(NOTE: that the original report incorrectly stated there were 2 Maintained Nursery schools under Notice of Concern, this was incorrect, there is only 1 MNS under concern). The correct numbers are stated above.

#### 12 Teachers Pay

The Secretary of State has recommended a pay cap increase of 2% for Teachers pay in 2019, which schools would be expected to fund from their own budgets. The Secretary of State however is committed to paying for the increase in teachers' pension contributions. The LA Finance Teams have updated budgets for schools with this in mind.

#### 13 School Balances Report

Schools Forum agreed to have an annual review of balances of 8% for secondary and 12% for primary schools. 21 schools were identified as holding balances in excess of these percentages. 14 of these schools were asked for additional information; and 7 schools were ultimately called. Only 1 school failed to attend the meeting as arranged - All Saints Primary School. Due to delays in the process, is considered too late for action this financial year, but in the new financial year, it is expected 'clawback' may be implemented, with added consideration for earmarked pupil premium funding held in balances. Schools Forum will debate this process again and SASH/SAPH will make the decision. High balances will be adjusted to include for pupil premium and sports funding. This review mechanism does not apply to academies.

**Date of Next Meeting** 

Monday 1st July 2019, 1.30pm-3.30pm, PDC, Formby

# Sefton Council Sefton Schools Forum Report

Date of Meeting:	1 July 2019
Title of Report:	Dedicated Schools Grant (DSG) Outturn 2018/19
Presenting Officer:	Mike McSorley/Kevin McBlain
Reason for Submission to Forum:	(4) ITEM FOR INFORMATION
Executive Summary:	To provide members with the DSG 2018/19 outturn position and level of Schools Balances and Centrally Managed / Retained DSG Reserves.
Budget/Risk Implications:	None
Recommendations :	Forum is asked note the 2018/19 outturn position and level of balances carried forward into 2019/20.
Appendices (to be attached)	Analysis of the 2018/19DSG Individual Schools Budgets (ISB) and Centrally Managed / Retained Schools Budgets (RSB) spending and balances.
Background Papers (available on request)	Year-end Revenue outturn 2018/19 Year end Head of Finance statement to DfE Schools Finance Regulations 2018
Report Originator and Contact Details	Name: Kevin McBlain Tele: 01519342171 E-mail: Kevin.mcblain@sefton.gov.uk

#### SCHOOLS' FORUM POWERS & RESPONSIBILITIES

- 1 ITEMS FOR APPROVAL (DfE can adjudicate where Forum does not agree LA proposal)
- 2 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but LA decides)
- 3 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but DfE decides)
- 4 ITEMS FOR INFORMATION (No formal view of the Forum is sought)

#### 1.0 Background

1.1 The purpose of this report is to inform members on how the Dedicated Schools Grant was spent in 2018/19, and to indicate the levels of schools' balances carried forward into 2019/20. In addition, to report on the Centrally Managed / Retained Schools budgets; High Needs and Early Years spending and year end DSG reserves.

#### 2.0 Outturn 2018/19

- 2.1 Appendix 1 (a) to the report includes an analysis of Individual School Budgets (ISB) compared with outturn, and shows the opening and closing level of schools balances. Appendix 1 (b) includes an analysis of the Centrally Retained (RSB); High Needs and Early Years non-schools Budgets and related outturn, along with carried forward DSG reserves.
- 2.2 ISBs represent the resources allocated to maintained schools through the schools formula funding, which is established by the Local Authority, in consultation with schools. RSBs represent resources agreed by Schools to be retained centrally by the Local Authority, to meet the costs of delivering education in settings other than its own maintained schools, as well as providing relevant pupil related support services. Central resources also include for provision of services, which may be delivered more effectively from a collective approach rather than through schools individually.
- 2.3 The allocation of DSG for 2018/19 was based on four main spending blocks i.e Schools; High Needs; Early Years and Central Schools Services block. Schools funding is based around weighted pupil numbers and a smaller range of deprivation factors using the October census data from the previous year (i.e October 2017 for 2018/19 funding). The formula excludes Special schools, which are covered by High Needs place funding allocations.
- 2.4 High Needs funding covers DSG for children with Special Education Needs and includes for place funding and additional top up funding as required for Pre16 pupils across mainstream Primary; Secondary and Special phases, including 2 Pupil Referral Units; and for Post 16 provision, funding to enable the Local Authority to pay top up costs only, with the EFA funding post 16 provision in schools and colleges directly. High Needs Funding also includes for payments to External and non-maintained schools funded by the Local Authority (for example independent special schools).
- 2.5 Early Years funding covers the provision of 3-4-year-old entitlement to universal 15 hours per week free nursery education for all parents, and up to an additional 15 hours per week childcare for eligible parents in employment. In addition, it covers nursery provision for eligible 2 year olds in maintained nursery schools; nursery classes in Primary schools; and private, voluntary or independent nurseries, based on parental income.
- 2.6 Each year, the Local Authority has a statutory requirement to meet the Minimum Funding Guarantee (MFG) for schools. This states the minimum percentage by which

Schools Forum 1<sup>st</sup> July 2019 Agenda Item 4

individual schools' budgets must increase or maximum decrease from the previous year, subject to pupil number changes. In 2018/19, the MFG was set at minus -0.5%.

#### 3.0 DSG Individual Schools Balances 2018/19

- 3.1 Appendix 1(a) shows the 2018/19 ISB schools budget, expenditure and spending variations, along with the value of the opening and closing schools' balances. Note that Maintained mainstream schools receive funding from the main Schools Block. The Central support service allocations are either funded specifically through dedlegated funding; taken out of the maintained schools funding; or, for the historic Central provision items, funding is found from the Central Schools Service Funding Block on behalf of all schools, including Academies.
- 3.2 High Needs and Early Years Funding Blocks are separate DSG funding streams and include the funding of Maintained Special Schools and High Needs spending services and for provision of early years services including Maintained nurseries; Nursery classes within schools and PVIs to deliver 2-4-year-old childcare.
- 3.3 During 2018/19, Maintained schools' balances decreased by a net £-2.127m moving from an opening balance of £14.994m to a closing balance of £12.867m at 31 March 2019 (See Appendix 3 for full analysis). Closer analysis of the schools' balances reveals the following:

Increase in balances year on year	Decrease in balances year on year	Net changes in balances year on year	Schools with deficit balances at 31.3.19
£000m	£000m	£000m	£000m
£0.868m	£0	£0.867m	
£0	£-1.511m	£-1.511m	
£0	£-0.569m	£-0.569m	
£0	£-0.999m	£-0.999m	
£0.294m	£0	£0.294m	
£0	£-0.135M	£-0.135m	
£0.081m	£0	£0.081m	
£0	£-0.156m	£-0.156m	
£1.243m (37)	£-3.370m (55)	£-2.127m (92)	
	balances year           on year           £000m           £0.868m           £0           £0           £0           £0.294m           £0           £0.081m	balances year on year         balances year on year           £000m         £000m           £0.868m         £0           £0         £-1.511m           £0         £-0.569m           £0         £-0.999m           £0.294m         £0           £0         £-0.135M           £0.081m         £0           £0         £-0.156m	balances year on year         balances year on year         in balances year on year           £000m         £000m         £000m           £0.868m         £0         £0.867m           £0         £-1.511m         £-1.511m           £0         £-0.569m         £-0.569m           £0         £-0.999m         £-0.999m           £0.294m         £0         £0.294m           £0         £-0.135M         £-0.135m           £0.081m         £0         £0.081m           £0         £-0.156m         £-0.156m

Incl in the above analysis		
2 Secondary		£1.166m
Schools		
1 Nursery		£0.270m
School		
Deficit		£1.436m
Balances		
carried		
forward		

- 3.4 In the year, 37 Schools, including Special Schools and Maintained Nurseries, had increased balances during 2018/19; whilst 55 schools saw balances decrease. 6 of these schools converted to Academies and the reduction in their balances is as a result of clearing them out to pay to the new converter school. 3 Schools have a licensed deficit balance to carry forward.
- 3.5 Members should also note that the schools' balances relate only to Sefton's Maintained Schools. Academies maintain their own balances and are directly accountable to the DfE on an academic year basis. Individual maintained schools' balances are attached at Appendix 3 for information. This information has been supplied to schools on an individual basis in May 2019.
- 3.6 During the year, schools (including Nursery and Special Schools received a number of separate DfE funding grants, in addition to their formula funding. These extra grants (£14.2m) included, Pupil Premium Grant; Universal Infant Free Schools Meals Grant; Supplemental FSM grant; Teachers Pay Grant; Year 7 Catch up grant and Sports and PE grant. These are analysed by school, for information, in Appendix 4.
- 3.6 In respect of Schools balances, Maintained Schools are requested to provide details of how they intend to use them going forward, in particular, where they exceed Schools Forum agreed limits of 12% of a Primary school's DSG allocation and 8% of a Secondary/Special school's allocation. This process of accountability was reviewed during 2015 by consultation with SAPH and SASH, and it was decided by a majority of Schools Forum members, that this process should continue. The deadline for supplying these details back to Finance, was 30 June 2019, and responses will be considered in due course for further enquiry, through the Balance control mechanism.

#### 4.0 DSG Centrally Retained Reserves

4.1 Appendix 1(b) shows the analysis of DSG Centrally / Managed Retained balances, which are kept as earmarked reserves by the Local Authority to support future spending on specific spending block related issues in conjunction with the agreement of Schools Forum or, as necessary, by the Local Authority in support of budget pressures.

Schools Forum 1st July 2019 Agenda Item 4

4.2 During 2018/19, the Centrally Managed DSG Budgets have overspent by a net £0.745m (overspend was £1.695m in 17/18). This is analysed below with main variations across each central funding block.

	£m
	(-) Under sper
	+ Over spen
Early Years related	
<u>Larry Tears Telated</u>	
2 Year Old Offer	-0.152
2017/18 3-4 YO funding for census number changes (Jan 17 / Jan 18)	-0.733
3-4-Year-old universal free entitlement and additional hours	-0.410
Early Years Pupil Premium	0.044
Disability Access Fund	-0.037
Contingency	-0.130
Early Years Inclusion Funding	-0.055
Items identified as committed against EY Reserves in 18/19	
2 Year old place support funding for ineligible children	0.050
Maintained Nursery School Project	0.040
Net Under-spend on Early Years 2018/19	-1.383
Schools de-delegated items & Centrally related	
Central Schools Services Block	
CONTRACT CONTRACT DISCON	
	2 22 -
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend	0.025
	0.025
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties Schools Support under-spend in 2018/19 (Actual take up) Ethnic minority achievement under spending in 2018/19	
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties Schools Support under-spend in 2018/19 (Actual take up)	-0.044
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties Schools Support under-spend in 2018/19 (Actual take up)  Ethnic minority achievement under spending in 2018/19 Combined budgets under spend – closed schools' mothballing / maintenance costs, grounds maintenance and PDC	-0.044 -0.079
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties Schools Support under-spend in 2018/19 (Actual take up)  Ethnic minority achievement under spending in 2018/19  Combined budgets under spend – closed schools' mothballing / maintenance costs, grounds maintenance and PDC expenditure	-0.044 -0.079 -0.013
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties Schools Support under-spend in 2018/19 (Actual take up)  Ethnic minority achievement under spending in 2018/19 Combined budgets under spend – closed schools' mothballing / maintenance costs, grounds maintenance and PDC expenditure  VAT Reclaimed back on School Licences	-0.044 -0.079 -0.013 -0.037
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties Schools Support under-spend in 2018/19 (Actual take up)  Ethnic minority achievement under spending in 2018/19  Combined budgets under spend – closed schools' mothballing / maintenance costs, grounds maintenance and PDC expenditure  VAT Reclaimed back on School Licences  Other net variations	-0.044 -0.079 -0.013 -0.037 -0.002
Primary Schools Class Size Growth Fund overspend Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties Schools Support under-spend in 2018/19 (Actual take up)  Ethnic minority achievement under spending in 2018/19 Combined budgets under spend – closed schools' mothballing / maintenance costs, grounds maintenance and PDC expenditure  VAT Reclaimed back on School Licences Other net variations  Net Under-spend on Schools de-delegated items &	-0.044 -0.079 -0.013 -0.037 -0.002

(5-11 yrs) Primary Resourced Units Top-Up Funding	0.250
(11-16 yrs) Secondary Top-Up Funding to mainstream schools	0.305
- incl Academies	
(16-18 yrs) Post 16 Top-Up Funding	0.564
Non-Maintained Special Day School Placements	1.114
Complex and Sensory Needs Team – staffing underspend	-0.156
DfE additional HN funding announced December 2018	-0.562
Net Over-spend against High Needs Budgets	2.278
Total Net Over-spending across DSG centrally managed budgets 2018/19	0.745

#### **Early Years Block**

- 4.3 Early Years provision underspent by £-1.383m in 2018/19. Sefton was paid a rate of £4.30 per hour for the 3-4-year-old universal and extra hours provision; and £5.22 per hour for 2-year-old provision. This is before allocations to providers locally. Local distribution included a universal Base Rate for 3-4 year olds of £4 per hour and £4.90 per hour for 2 Year olds, the same as for 2017/18. The remainder of the funding was allocated to deprivation; support costs; transitional funding towards training; and SEND Inclusion. Separate funding allocations were made for Early Years Pupil Premium; Disability Access Funding and Maintained Nursery Schools' transitional funding protection.
- 4.4 2018/19 saw the full year effect of the increase of the extra 15 hours free childcare available to working parents. Sefton's uptake remains buoyant, however 3-4-year-old provision underspent in the year by £-0.410m. Similarly, a fall in eligible 2 Year olds also led to an underspend against budget of £-0.103m when offset against the reserve funding, made available to pay for places where the eligibility criteria isn't met, but where health professionals recommend a child would benefit from early admission into a nursery. Schools Forum agreed use of DSG reserves for this purpose.
- 4.5 In July 2018, the DfE reviewed the funded numbers of 2-4 year olds, based on the year on year Headcount census data and this can result in either a clawback of inyear funding and/or previous financial year funding or increased funding. Sefton were awarded £-0.733m additional funding for 3-4-Year-old provision, related to 2017/18 change in numbers, whilst suffering a reduction to 2-Year-old funding of £-0.206m due to declining numbers between the annual census days.
- 4.6 Other Early Years spending, saw an over spending on the EY Pupil Premium of £0.044m. This relies on parents, who are not in employment, to provide their NI details and DOB etc to their nursery Provider, who, after a check on eligibility, can receive the Premium Grant, which is worth £302 per child pa.
- 4.7 The Disability Access Funding for Early Years was underspent by £0.037m. This is funding given for children claiming Disability Living Allowance and is paid as a lump

Schools Forum 1<sup>st</sup> July 2019 Agenda Item 4

sum to Nurseries at £615 per child pa. Similarly, the contingency made available for training and Early Years inclusion was underspent by £-0.185m.

- 4.8 In 2018, Schools Forum agreed to provide up to £0.040m to the Maintained Nursery Schools in 2018/19, from Early Years centrally retained Reserves, to enable them to work on a sustainability report to the DCS, based in the knowledge that the transitional protection funding given by the DfE in support of these schools, might come to an end in 2019/20. However, this funding has now been extended up until the end of the 2019/20 Academic Year, taking it to end of August 2020. No further announcements have yet been made regards ongoing funding beyond this period.
- 4.9 The sizeable underspending of Early years budgets, as shown above, has helped to mitigate the significant overspending on the High Needs budgets in 2018/19, keeping the DSG centrally retained 'deficit' balances to well within the DfE's 1% threshold of total Block funding, before a formal plan of action is required to bring the deficit position down over a 3-5-year period.
- 4.10 Members may recall from a previous report, explaining the DfE's plan to introduce a formal deficit reduction template, and a report for Local Authorities to complete from 2018/19 outturn, and to be agreed with the DfE and shared with the Schools Forum by the end of June. The trigger mechanism for this, is when a Local Authority's DSG Centrally retained balances, go into a net deficit value above a 1% of their total DSG funding (incl Academies). Sefton's trigger in 2018/19 would have been a net deficit of £2.027m. Our net deficit position at the end of 2018/19 is £0.745m.

#### **Central School Services Block**

- 4.11 The Central Schools Services block of services, consists of a number of de-delegated items agreed with maintained schools and centrally retained services, which are funded from a top-slice of the schools' block allocation for services which are considered better managed corporately.
- 4.12 Overall, these items under spent by £-0.151m in 2018/19. A quick analysis includes under spending on Trade Union Facility Time / Public Duties support £-0.044m (£-0.113m in 2017/18); Underspending on Ethnic Minority Achievement (£-0.079m); and Combined Budgets, including the PDC and Grounds maintenance / mothballing and R&M costs of closed schools (£-0.013m). Primary infant class growth over spending by £0.025m, whilst support to schools causing concern spent just over budget. We are also able to reclaim VAT on the School Licences (£-0.037m), which are included, then top-sliced from our DSG allocation, for national purchase by the Government on behalf of all schools.
- 4.13 The surplus balance on Central Services spending will be carried forward into 2019/20, and its use considered during the year. It has been noted from 2017/18, that the underspend against Trade Union Facility time should be earmarked for future use around the Facility Time contributions, yet to be agreed This has now accumulated to £-0.157m.

4.14 A further report will be brought to the Schools Forum in the Autumn term, if additional support is required in 2019/20, to support additional cost pressures against these budget areas, in particular Schools causing concern and growth in Infant numbers. The net underspending in this area, has also contributed towards mitigating the significant High Needs overspending in 2018/19.

#### **High Needs Block**

- 4.15 High Needs budgets overspent by a net £2.278m in 2018/19. Forecasts brought to the March Schools Forum meeting, suggested an overspend may be around £1.9m, so a worse position than suggested, by outturn.
- 4.16 This overspend has been partially mitigated by underspending on Early Years and the Central Schools Support budget areas (£-1.533m) and from brought forward reserves of (£-0.515m) leaving the overall centrally retained DSG reserves with a net deficit of £0.230m going forward into 2019/20. Note, that last year's outturn report netted the Early Years reserves against the High Needs overspending, and this was incorrect analysis, though the net balances shown, were correct. This has now been rectified to show the position against each individual DSG Block Reserve.
- 4.17 The High Needs overspend is analysed in the table above, but in summary, consists of £1.882m Top up funding related additional costs; £1.114m Non-maintained school places; Complex and Sensory Team underspending £-0.156m and contribution from the DfE through growth funding of £-0.562m announced only in late December 2018.
- 4.18 High Needs is currently under review, but it is expected that there will be an over spending in 2019/20 of around £2.1m unless any mitigating reductions in cost can be found over the coming months.
- 4.19 In summary, DSG Centrally retained non-school reserves started the year with a surplus balance of £0.515m and after a net over spending of £0.745m (as identified above), has ended the year with a small net deficit carry forward of £0.230m. An analysis of the Central DSG reserves is shown in appendix 1b below. Detailed schools' balances are attached as appendix 3.

#### 5.0 Future Commitments against Reserves

- 5.1 Ringfencing any of the centrally retained DSG balances, which lie in areas of surplus i.e Early Years and Central Support services, may become difficult going forward, given the fact that High Needs provision is significantly overspending year on year, and that there are no Council resources to mitigate this position.
- 5.2 From the Authority's (and the DfE's) perspective, any centrally retained DSG reserves are considered net, (as a whole), rather than piecemeal, by Block, for the purpose of determining accountability for deficits, and for making any plans to come out of them. Whilst it is acknowledged that there has been substantial contribution from Early Years, not only towards High Needs budgets, but also towards mitigating overspending, any further commitments against these reserves will need to be limited

Schools Forum 1<sup>st</sup> July 2019 Agenda Item 4

to most essential items only, to safeguard the level of balances / and or to reduce the level of overall deficit.

- 5.2 High Needs budgets continue to overspend and it is difficult to see how cost reductions may be made, without changes to expectations, some careful planning and/or increased funding from Government. The High Needs review has highlighted many issues, which will take time to change/implement. Most costs around educating children with SEND, are long term, and once committed, the scope to reduce them is very limited.
- 5.3 Continued overspending in this area, will ultimately take the overall centrally retained DSG balances further into deficit, and this, in turn, will trigger the DfE's requirement to provide robust plans to reduce expenditure, once the deficit exceeds 1% of total DSG funding, which is very likely to happen in 2019/20. To make new commitments against those balances in surplus, would be to strain the current overspend position even further.
- 5.4 Below, are stated (Appendix 2), the reserves, which are deemed to contain some previously agreed ringfenced items. Forum may need to consider whether these should still be maintained beyond 2019/20 on the basis of the comments above.
- 5.1. The centrally managed DSG reserves at the end of 2018/19 are in surplus (£-0.375m) and balances related to Trade Union Facility time are deemed to be ringfenced within this balance (£-0.157m) pending any decision to use this funding.
- 5.2. The Early Years reserves, with a surplus of £-3.083m, contain two ringfenced areas previously agreed by Schools Forum some years ago :
  - 2 YO support to PVIs to help place children with Disabilities who fall outside of eligibility criteria for free 2YO nursery entitlement (£-0.104m) ongoing applications. The value of this may need to be reduced gradually.
  - Committed spending against training for providers (balance of unused funding from 16/17) (£-0.063m) not taken up for three years. This may need to be taken out of all future commitments going forward.

The committed values above, total £-0.325m. If applied in full in 2019/20, the net reserves would show an increased deficit of £0.555m.

5.3. With a forecast overspend of £2.1m on High Needs in 2019/20, the deficit on these balances would grow to an estimated £2.655m, with some possible mitigation from underspending against Early Years in 2019/20, estimated at c.£-0.350m; plus say underspending against central services say - c. £-0.100m, and we could end 2019/20 with a net deficit of £2.205m to carry forward into 2020/21. This would be above the 1% DSG threshold, sufficient to trigger a report and plan of action to the DfE. Any action plan might mean reviewing all DSG areas of spending, in a bid to reduce costs. Such a position needs to be addressed, with an overview of the whole range of services. It has been made clear by Council Members, that DSG deficits cannot be found from Council balances and remain the responsibility of the Local Authority to make plans within the DSG services for cost reductions to bring balances back into break-even.

- 5.4. Pressures will no doubt be placed on the Central schools' service reserve, as the number of schools causing concern will continue to grow and extra support will be required for those schools having very low balances, to help meet costs of redundancy.
- 5.5. With respect to Early Years, the underspending in 2018/19 may not be repeated and it is expected that the DfE will look to clawback up to £0.300m of funding related to changes in headcount, particularly across 2 year olds year on year. Hence a low expectation of any big underspending for 2019/20.

#### 6.0 Recommendations

- 6.1 Appendix 2 shows an analysis of the centrally retained DSG reserves for information.
- 6.2 The closing balance of all Centrally Retained DSG reserves as a percentage of total 2018/19 DSG funding represents around minus -0.001% (0.11% 2017/18)
- 6.3 Members are asked to note the outturn report for 2018/19 and levels of balances carried forward to 2019/20.

#### APPENDIX 1 (a)

(a) ANALYSIS OF MAINTAINED SCHOOLS OUTTURN 2018/19 FOR INDIVIDUAL SCHOOLS BUDGETS (a) AND (b) FOR CENTRALLY MANAGED / RETAINED SCHOOLS BUDGETS

#### **INDIVIDUAL SCHOOLS BUDGETS**

Opening Schools Balances - Surplus (-) / Deficit 1.4.2018	SCHOOLS	Schools DSG - Individual Schools Budgets 2018/19	Outturn Net Expenditure - Individual Schools Budgets 2018/19	Outturn Variations – Under spend (-) / Overspend 2018/19	Closing Schools Balances 31.3.2019
<u>£'s</u>		<u>£'s</u>	£'s	£'s	<u>£'s</u>
(-192,273) (-11,697,229) (-1,012,417) (-2,092,284) 0	Nursery Primary Secondary Special (incl. PRUs) Academies  EFA 6th Form Funding	1,416.879 96,154,928 27,674,156 14,926,057 50,781,347 3,464,109	1,491,967 97,365,933 28,672,387 14,768,589 50,781,347 3,464,109	75,088 1,211,005 998,231 (-157,468) 0	(-117,185) (-10,486,224) (-14,186) (-2,249,752) 0
(-14,994,203)	(Excl SEN Post 16)  ISB DSG Funding	194,417,476	196,544,332	2,126,856	(-12,867,347)
	ISB Outturn 2017/18 &			, -,	
(-14,994,203)	adjusted Schools Balances for 2018/19	194,417,476	196,544,332	2,126,856	(-12,867,347)

#### APPENDIX 1 (b)

# <u>CENTRALLY MANAGED DSG EXTERNAL AND SUPPORT BUDGETS & DSG RESERVES</u>

<u>B</u> !	UDGET AREAS	DSG - Retained Schools Budgets 2018/19	Outturn Net Expenditure - Retained Schools Budgets 2018/19	Outturn Variations – Under spend (-) / Overspend 2018/19	
		<u>£'s</u>	<u>£'s</u>	<u>£'s</u>	
Early	Years	17,860,604	16,477,936	(-1,382,668)	
	Needs	27,747,507	30,026,003	2,278,496	
items Budg grow (£150 facing diffici	ools de-delegated s & Centrally related lets 2018/2019- incl th in class size Ok) and Schools g financial ulties support Bk) contingencies	2,270,871	2,119,820	(-151,051)	
		47,878,982	48,623,759	744,777	
		47,070,002	40,020,100	1 4 4,777	
DSG	Funding	(-47,878,982)	(-47,878,982)	0	
Net o	over spend 2018/19				
	Centrally Managed DSG Budgets	0	744,777	744,777	
gross licen are p the E slice budg Outto	ntrally retained figs sed up for school ce costs, which paid nationally by OfE from a top- of schools' get allocations. urn figs are net of himable VAT on ces.				

Schools Forum 1<sup>st</sup> July 2019 Agenda Item 4

Opening DSG Retained Balances 1.4.2018	SUMMARY OF CENTRALLY MANAGED / RETAINED DSG RESERVES	Application of Reserve in 2018/19 (within Schools DSG analysis)	Contribution to Reserve in 2018/19 (See Centrally Managed / Retained analysis)	Net Movement in Reserves 2018/19	Closing DSG Retained Balances 31.3.2019 (-) Surplus
£'s					£'s
(-1,655,647)	Early Years reserve	90,056	(-1,472,724)	(-1,382,668)	(-3,038,315)
1,364,491	High Needs reserve	2,286,839	(-8,343)	2,278,496	3,642,987
(-224,083)	Schools de-delegated items & Centrally related reserve	0	(-151,051)	(-151,051)	(-375,134)
(-515,239)	DSG Reserves @ 31.3.19	2,376,895	(-1,632,118)	744,777	229,538

#### **ANALYSIS OF DSG UNCOMMITTED RESERVES 2019/20 - APPENDIX 2**

	<b>EARLY YEARS</b>	<b>SCHOOLS</b>	HIGH NEEDS	TOTALS
	£	£	£	£
Opening balance 1.4.2019 (-) Surplus / Deficit	(-3,038,315)	(-375,134)	3,642,987 (Def)	229,538 (Def)
Committed use of reserves in 19/20:				
2 YO support to PVIs to help place children with Disabilities who fall outside of eligibility criteria for free 2YO nursery entitlement	104,000			104,000
Committed spending against training for providers (balance of unused funding from 17/18)	63,000			63,000
Trade Union Facility Time				
		157,000		157,000
Uncommitted DSG Reserves Net Deficit	(-2,871,315)	(-218,134)	3,642,987 (Def)	553,538 Def

<sup>\*\*</sup>Note that the LEA can decide how these centrally managed DSG reserves are deployed, subject to budget pressures across the spending blocks. If the ringfenced amounts identified above, are assumed to be applied in 2019/20, overall, the centrally retained DSG balances are in growing deficit (£0.553m), which would be expected to rise to over £2m net, by the end of 2019/20, due to a forecast overspend on High Needs £2.1m; This might be mitigated

Schools Forum 1<sup>st</sup> July 2019 Agenda Item 4

by an assumed under spending by Early Years (£-0.300m) and Central Services Block (£-0.100m), taking the net balances to a deficit of £2.253m by the end of the year. It is suggested that no further commitments should be made against these reserves and Forum will need to consider whether to continue with the items identified as ring fenced above, whilst every effort must be to reduce the deficit position, particularly around High Needs spending.

# Sefton Council Sefton Schools Forum Report

Date of Meeting:	1st July 2019	
Title of Report:	DSG Central Schools Services; Growth Funding 2019/20	
Presenting Officer:	Mike McSorley/Kevin McBlain	
Reason for Submission to Forum:	(1) ITEMS FOR APPROVAL& (4) ITEMS FOR INFORMATION	
Executive Summary:	The 2019/20 DSG settlement included £0.577m for Pupil Growth Funding. Schools Forum agreed to increase the central Growth Funding contingency from £0.150m to £0.350m in 2019/20. The rest of the growth funding was delegated out to all schools through the formula funding model to support ongoing pressures within the education system in 2019/20.	
	This current growth funding contingency is used to support Infant Class Size legislation and also expanding schools. However, the funding legislation allows Schools Forum to make provision from the central Growth Funding contingency to provide in-year support to schools with significant pupil increases if they wish.	
	As schools are funded for the financial year based on the previous October census, there are occasions where some schools have seen a significant increase in pupil the following October census. In these circumstances schools have had to meet in-year increases to running costs without any additional funding until the following April settlement.	
Budget/Risk Implications:	None	
Recommendations .	The Schools Forum is asked to note/ and or agree the following recommendations:	
•	ITEMS FOR NOTING BY SCHOOLS FORUM	
	Note the decision taken at the 14 <sup>th</sup> January 2019 Schools Forum meeting, by unanimous vote of all Members to increase the central Growth Funding contingency to £0.350m to meet basic need provision in 2019/20.      ITEMS REQUIRING A VOTE OF FORUM REPRESENTATIVES     AS NECESSARY	
	To agree by a vote, the additional support to schools facing significant increases in pupil numbers being funded from any residual growth funding contingency based on the criteria described in Para 3.2 (ALL Schools to vote)	

Schools Forum 1st July 2019 Agenda Item 5

Appendices (to be attached)	None
Background	
Papers	DSG Funding Allocation Report 2019/20 – 14 January 2019
(available on request)	
Report Originator	Name:Kevin McBlain
and Contact	Tele: 0151 934 4049
Details	E-mail: kevin.mcblain@sefton.gov.uk

#### SCHOOLS' FORUM POWERS & RESPONSIBILITIES

- 1 ITEMS FOR APPROVAL (DfE can adjudicate where Forum does not agree LA proposal)
- 2 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but LA decides)
- 3 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but DfE decides)
- 4 ITEMS FOR INFORMATION (No formal view of the Forum is sought)

#### 1.0 Background

- 1.1 Local authorities are permitted to continue to hold a growth fund contingency from the DSG in advance of allocating school budget shares. The growth fund is ring fenced so that it only used for the purpose of supporting growth in pupil numbers to meet basic need and to support additional classes needed to meet the infant class size regulation. It can only be used for this purpose and there must be clear criteria, approved by Forum to identify the circumstances upon which payments are made.
- 1.2 This funding is used to bridge the September-April gap between the additional children arriving on roll in the September and the Pupil Led funding catching up with the new census data in April. This funding is deducted from the DSG as a whole to reduce its impact on budgets overall.
- 1.3 As part of the Schools Block allocations for 2019/20, the DfE have adopted a new method of allocating Pupil Growth funding, based on actual movement of pupils between the last two years, and using the data from the October 2018 school Census, rather than on a historic funding basis. This change has seen Sefton's funding increase by £0.577m in 2019/20.
- 1.4 The DfE are not prescriptive as to whether all this funding should be managed centrally towards pupil growth, or whether a smaller figure is set aside. This is a decision taken between each Local Authorities in conjunction with their Schools and Schools Forum.
- 1.5 The Local Authority is already supporting a number of schools who have been asked to increase their PAN to support additional population bulges within the borough. The implementation of the Sefton Local Plan is now underway and as a result there is a need to increase school places in specific areas to support increasing pupil population numbers.
- 1.6 The Local Authority therefore recommended that Schools Forum agree to increase the current growth funding contingency by £0.200m (from £0.150m to £0.350m) when setting the 2019/20 School Block allocation. The additional £0.377m growth funding was delegated to schools through the local formula funding to support ongoing pressures within the education system.

**Regulation 9(7)** requires local authorities to put any unspent money from the growth and infant class size funds back into the individual schools' budget, so that it is recycled to schools. As this is fully utilized in 2018/19 nothing was included in the schools formula for 2019/20.

#### 2.0 <u>Current Growth funding criteria</u>

#### 2.1 Infant Class Size Funding

Infant Class Size funding is allocated to schools following an application process in the Spring term. Funding is allocated for the salary cost of: 1 fte teacher (M5) for the period September to March and the cost of up to 0.5fte learning assistant (level 2) plus £5,000 to support additional equipment/teaching resources.

#### 2.2 Expanding Schools

This funding relates to basic need provision.

Additional funding will be made available to schools and academies in circumstances where there is an increase in the school's PAN as a result of a formal consultation process by the Council.

Allocated funding will generally be in respect of the period September to March. Where the increase in the school's PAN results in the need for an additional class, the funding allocated will be equivalent to the cost of 1 fte teacher (M5) for the period September to March and where necessary, the cost of up to 0.5fte learning assistant (level 2) plus £5,000 to support additional equipment/teaching resources.

#### 2.2 Exceptional Pupil Growth funding will be provided to a primary school where:

- the Council agree that exceeding PAN (temporarily) or increasing the PAN (permanently) is necessary to meet population growth (not simply popularity growth or one school's desire to increase capacity);
- (b) The Council agree that the creation of an additional class is necessary and is directly related to exceeding PAN;
- (c) The class is additional if it requires a change in the school's current or historical class organisation or number of classes;
- (d) Schools that have historically operated mixed age classes or have a PAN in a multiple of 15 would be normally expected to operate some mixed-age classes. (The growth funding cannot be used only to reduce class sizes.)
- (e) A school's compulsory school-age range is increased the additional classes created would be funded. (e.g. when an infant school is converted into a primary school, it would be funded for each additional junior class created.
- (f) Funding would be provided only for the first academic year that an additional class is created.
- (g) Where one additional class was needed in an area but agreement cannot be reached to fund one school, the funding allocation may be split between two or more schools.
- (h) Schools must comply with the infant class size legislation (and any school funded would not also receive separate infant class size funding).

Growth fund will apply to primary academies on an academic year basis

Schools funded by this method will not be eligible to receive class sizes of 30 funding or significant increases in pupil numbers funding

#### 3. Supporting schools with significant increases in Pupil Numbers

- 3.1 The Local Authority has received requests for support from schools facing financial challenges due to significant increases in pupil numbers. Members will be aware that schools are funded for the financial year based on the previous October census. There are occasions where some schools have seen a significant increase in pupil by the following October census and in these circumstances schools have had to meet in-year increases to running costs without any additional funding until the following April funding settlement.
- 3.2 It is proposed that any residual growth funding available after allocating out funding for Infant Class Size Funding and expanding schools is used to support schools with significant increases in pupil numbers using the following criteria:

#### Significant Increases in Pupil Numbers

This funding relates to basic need provision.

Schools are funded for the financial year based on the previous October census. If a school's pupil numbers have increased significantly by the following October census, funding will be awarded from September – March based on £2,746.99 per primary school age pupil and £3,862.65 per secondary school age pupil (new NFF per pupil funding allocations) on a pro-rata basis. This may need to be scaled down depending on the number of children who attract this funding.

Schools are entitled to funding if their numbers increase by more than 10 for primary schools, or 20 for secondary schools or if there is an overall increase of at least 10% in a school's pupil numbers. Schools will only receive funding for any pupils over and above the stated thresholds.

Growth fund for 'significant increases in pupil numbers' will be allocated to schools who have had a large increase in total pupil numbers from the previous October headcount compared to the current October headcount. The additional pupils will be funded for 7 months in the current financial year.

If schools have received any other funding for pupil growth this will be captured when calculating significant increases in pupil numbers funding to ensure that schools are not funded twice

3.3 A review of the current school population information showed that if this amendment to the growth funding was in operation in 2018/19, then 5 primary schools and 7 secondary schools would have received additional support using the above criteria and it would have cost circa £0.255m without any scaling factor being administered.

#### 4.0 Recommendations

4.1 The Schools Forum is asked to note/ and or agree the following recommendations:

Schools Forum 1<sup>st</sup> July 2019 Agenda Item 5

#### **ITEMS FOR NOTING BY SCHOOLS FORUM**

 Note the decision taken at the 14<sup>th</sup> January 2019 Schools Forum meeting, by unanimous vote of all Members to increase the central Growth Funding contingency to £0.350m to meet basic need provision in 2019/20.

# ITEMS REQUIRING A VOTE OF FORUM REPRESENTATIVES AS NECESSARY

To agree by a vote, the additional support to schools facing significant increases in pupil numbers being funded from any residual growth funding contingency based on the criteria described in Para 3.2 above (ALL Schools to vote)

# Sefton Council Sefton Schools Forum Report

Date of Meeting:	1 July 2019	
Title of Report:	Proposals to change the Early Years sub group of Schools Forum	
Presenting Officer:	Kevin McBlain	
Reason for Submission to Forum:	(2) ITEM FOR CONSULTATION	
Executive Summary:	To provide members with some draft Terms of Reference towards a proposal to change the way the Early Years Sector is represented through its links with Providers and with Schools Forum going forward.	
Budget/Risk Implications:	None	
Recommendations:	<ol> <li>Forum is asked to</li> <li>Consider and agree the proposed Terms of Reference for a new Early Years Development Group with any amendments as agreed.</li> <li>Agree to disband the Early Years sub group of Schools Forum with effect from the end of August 2019.</li> <li>Acknowledge the start of the new Early Years Development Group from the new Academic Year (Sept 2019)</li> </ol>	
Appendices (to be attached)	Proposed Terms of Reference for the Early Years Development Group Appendix 1	
Background Papers (available on request)		
Report Originator	Name: Kevin McBlain	
and Contact Details	Tele: 01519344049 E-mail: Kevin.mcblain@sefton.gov.uk	

#### SCHOOLS' FORUM POWERS & RESPONSIBILITIES

- 1 ITEMS FOR APPROVAL (DfE can adjudicate where Forum does not agree LA proposal)
- 2 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but LA decides)
- 3 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but DfE decides)
- 4 ITEMS FOR INFORMATION (No formal view of the Forum is sought)

#### 1. Background

- 1.1 Members of Forum received a report at the last meeting to consider the establishment of a new Early Years development group to replace the existing Early Years Schools Forum sub group, which meetings have not always been representative of all sectors, or had chance to meet regularly
- 1.2 At the meeting, there was some debate around the purpose for having a new group and officers were tasked with coming back to Forum with some draft Terms of Reference. Subsequently, some draft Terms of Reference are now attached at Appendix 1.

#### 2. <u>Making changes</u>

- 2.1 Over the last two years, there have been many changes across Early Years including changes to the funding from Government and the move towards paying providers a universal hourly rate; transitional funding for Maintained Nursery Schools, which now expires in August 2020 (following a recent announcement by the DfE); the addition of the extra 15 hours childcare for 3-4 year olds based on parents working; and ongoing development of the 2-Year-Old Offer
- 2.2 The need for an effective platform for all providers to discuss their common issues and to raise their concerns on a variety of issues has never been more important. Areas such as finance, transitions; quality; planning; SEND; performance and social mobility to suggest a few key areas.
- 2.3 Officers and nursery staff from across Early Years and Early help in the community have now drafted up some Terms of Reference towards the creation of a new Early Years development group, which are attached at Appendix 1 for consideration
- 2.4 The Terms of Reference cover a number of key areas including the key purpose of the group and its responsibilities; proposed membership and qualities required of representatives to support the group; the frequency of meetings designed around Schools Forum; and governance
- 2.5 Given Schools Forum agreement to progress with the creation of the new Early Years development group, membership recruitment would begin over the next few months, with a first meeting being planned prior to the next Schools Forum in September 2019.

#### 3. Recommendations

Forum is asked to

- Consider and agree the proposed Terms of Reference for a new Early Years Development Group with any amendments as agreed.
- Agree to disband the Early Years sub group of Schools Forum with effect from the end of August 2019.
- Acknowledge the start of the new Early Years Development Group from the new Academic Year (Sept 2019)

#### **APPENDIX 1**

#### Early Years Development Group - Draft Terms of Reference

The Early Years Development Group considers all aspects related to high quality early years provision. It reports directly to the Schools Forum in respect of financial resources and to the Early Help Partnership Group regarding wider Early Years Development Issues. The aim being to secure the best possible outcomes for children by delivering an education which is high quality, flexible and accessible and gives parents choice about what is best for their children. Success will be measured quantitatively through; OFSTED Inspection Outcomes, EYFSP, reduction in entry to the health and social care system and qualitatively through feedback and consultation with stakeholders.

#### 1. Key Purpose

- a. To develop an annual Early Years Plan addressing emerging priorities regarding quality and development.
- b. To debate, discuss and agree a resolution to Early Years priorities ensuring a clear vision for development across the partnership.
- c. To provide effective oversight and challenge to issues affecting Early Years both at a National and Local level, including but not exclusive of: Initial Training, Continuing Professional Development, funding, sufficiency, quality, early intervention and prevention
- d. To facilitate a collaborative and cohesive Early Years system focused on securing the best outcomes for children and families.
- e. To co-ordinate the provision of constructive challenge across the system around performance and impact and work to the best possible outcomes for young children within available resources.
- f. In order to achieve the Key Purposes detailed above the following themes may feature on the Strategic Plan and subsequent agendas:

Theme	Success Measure
Impact of 30 hours on 2-year-old offer and ensuring both offers continue to succeed	Take up
Refresh the approach to two-year-old offer	New 2YO Strategy in place complete with partnership involvement
Ensuring the funded childcare offer in Sefton continues to serve the authority, families and children well (not sure this target – is measurable)	Take up / Sufficiency / OFSTED Outcomes / EYFSP Outcomes / Reduction in entry to health / social care services
Quality of provision and readiness of providers to comply with the revised OFSTED Inspection Framework	OFSTED Outcomes

Transition from Nursery to Statutory Schooling	EYFSP Outcomes – feedback from schools
Planning CPD for all EY sector	CPD Delivered in response to identified priorities
Early years funding	Allocation of funding across providers and in response to identified Early Years Need
National and regional developments and updates	
Early identification and special educational needs	Increased confidence in providers meeting children's SEND (measured through EYFSP outcomes and reduction in referrals
Data overview and planning responses	Strategic Plan developed in response to emerging priorities
Ensure Social Mobility Action Planning is implicit in all themes	Strategic plan

#### 2. Responsibilities

The group will develop and enact processes and procedures that will ensure the key purpose above is delivered.

The groups key responsibilities will be to:

- a. Facilitate an upward trajectory in the proportion of children who are Ready for School, as measured by the EYFSP at the end of the Foundation Stage.
- b. Provide good quality information, advice and guidance that meets the needs of parents and prospective parents
- c. Secure sufficient, good quality early education and childcare places to meet families' needs.
- d. Improve parental confidence in identifying and meeting the needs of their children
- e. Encourage all parents and carers to optimise their own mental wellbeing and to develop positive relationships with their child.
- f. Ensure a skilled and effective workforce
- g. Enable a culture of continuous quality improvement which is embedded across all organisations and ensure there is an understanding and sharing of good practice.

#### 3. Proposed Membership

Early Help Service Lead Team Manager for Localities with an Early Years specialism Early Years SEND representative Representation from Maintained Nursery Schools

Representation from the Private, voluntary and independent sector

Representation from Childminders

Representation from Play Groups

Representation from out of school providers

Representative from LA Finance Team

Representative from primary education

Representation from Business Intelligence and/or sufficiency

Representative from North West Boroughs and other health provider – including Health Visitors

and Speech and Language Therapy Representative from Social Care

Early Years Representative from Schools Forum if not included above

Where appropriate mechanisms will also be put in place to engage with children, young people, families and frontline staff

#### 4. Frequency of meetings

The Development Group will act as a channel by which those involved in ownership and management of early years settings may convey their views. It would be expected that the Development Group would meet termly prior to Schools Forum to ensure smooth reporting mechanisms

Group members should:

- Have the ability, capacity and commitment to communicate within their sector.
- Ensure that the needs and views of their sector are represented impartially.
- Have the ability to take a strategic view across their sector.
- Be pro-active in raising the profile of Development Group matters as appropriate.
- Be able to commit to attending all Working Group meetings a minimum of three meetings per year, and ensure a suitable deputy will attend in their absence
- To be open to and have a professional understanding to other viewpoints and needs

#### 5. Governance

The Strategic Group will be chaired independently and will communicate;

- I. through reports and minutes to the Schools Forum via the Schools Forum Early Years elected representative or any other elected Forum member present, in respect of financial resources
- II. through the Early Help Partnership Group in respect of wider Early Years Developments

  Any requests to use financial resources would be brought within the decision-making

responsibilities of the Schools Forum to ensure transparency. The representative from the LA Finance Team would be able to advise the group regarding available financial resources.



# Sefton Council Sefton Schools Forum Report

Date of Meeting:	1 July 2019			
Title of Report: Scheme for Financing Local Authority Maintained Scand Schools Financial Regulations				
Presenting Officer:	Kevin McBlain			
Reason for Submission to Forum:	(4) ITEMS FOR INFORMATION			
Executive Summary:	To inform Members of Schools Forum about an update to the Local Authority Scheme for Financing Maintained Schools.			
Budget/Risk Implications:	None			
Recommendations:	Schools Forum are asked to;  1.Note the consultation with Maintained Schools on the Scheme for Financing Schools and Schools Financial Regulations, which ran between 10th and 21st June 2019 and update for any amendments.  2.Consider and approve the updated Scheme for Financing Schools and the Schools Financial Regulations, which will both become effective immediately.			
Appendices (to be attached)	Appendix 1 Scheme for Financing Schools Appendix 2 Schools Financial Regulations			
Background Papers (available on request)	DfE Revised guidance on Local Authority Scheme of Financing Maintained Schools – Issued 5 February 2019.			
Report Originator and Contact Details	Name: Kevin McBlain Tele: 01519344049 E-mail: Kevin.mcblain@sefton.gov.uk			

#### SCHOOLS' FORUM POWERS & RESPONSIBILITIES

- 1 ITEMS FOR APPROVAL (DfE can adjudicate where Forum does not agree LA proposal)
- 2 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but LA decides)
- 3 ITEMS FOR CONSULTATION (Forum provides a view on LA proposal but DfE decides)
- 4 ITEMS FOR INFORMATION (No formal view of the Forum is sought)

#### 1. Background

1.1 Every Local Authority is required by statute to keep and publish its own Scheme for Financing its maintained schools. This document has to be made available for reference on the Council's intranet and is modelled around DfE guidance.

#### 2. Updating the Scheme

- 2.1 In February 2019, the DfE have issued revisions to the Scheme, which Local Authorities are requested to adopt locally, and to consult with their Maintained Schools and subsequently to get Schools Forum approval.
- 2.2 The Scheme focuses on the financial relationship between the Local Authority and its Maintained schools. Included in the scheme is guidance on a host of finance related issues including but not exhaustive:
  - Financial controls in schools
  - Banking arrangements
  - The treatment of surplus balances and deficits
  - Licenced deficits
  - Income
  - Taxation
  - Insurance
  - Responsibility for repairs and maintenance
  - Provision of services and facilities by the Authority
  - The school funding framework
  - Responsibility over redundancy and early retirement costs
  - Various governance issues and responsibilities

Sefton is currently updating its Scheme in light of the latest updates from the DfE; and will be consulting with schools around the document as well as seeking Schools Forum approval of the updated document.

The DfE have made several changes around:

- Duties in respect seeking efficiencies and value for money
- Changes being made to the Schools Financial Values Standard (SFVS)
- Controls around fraud and safeguarding the use of resources and assets
- Registration of business interests across schools governing bodies
- School Borrowing permissions
- Loan schemes for capital items and loans against deficits.
- The Scheme is quite comprehensive in its guidance, and in June, the Local Authority consulted with the maintained schools about the revised Scheme, along with the Local

# Agenda Item 7 Schools Forum 1 July 2019 Agenda Item 7

Authority's Schools Financial Regulations and would now attach both documents for Schools Forum approval (Appendix 1 and 2).

#### 3. Recommendations

- 3.1 Schools Forum are asked to;
  - 1.Note the consultation with Maintained Schools on the Scheme for Financing Schools and Schools Financial Regulations, which ran between 10th and 21st June 2019 and updated for any amendments.
  - 2. Consider and approve the updated Scheme for Financing Schools and the Schools Financial Regulations, which will both become effective immediately.

.

•

Schools Forum 1 July 2019 Agenda Item 7

June 19

# Sefton Council **E**

# SCHEME FOR FINANCING SCHOOLS

#### **Updated 10.06.2019**

#### LIST OF CONTENTS

			_	_	_			
4	I N	т	П	$\sim$	$\Box$		$\sim$ T	ION
- 1	ш		ĸ	l J		u		и ли

- 1.1 The funding framework
- 1.2 The role of the scheme
- 1.3 Publication of the scheme
- 1.4 Revision of the scheme
- 1.5 Roles and Responsibilities

#### 2. FINANCIAL CONTROLS

- 2.1 Application of financial controls to schools
- 2.2 Provision of financial information and reports
- 2.3 Cash Flow Plans
- 2.4 Payment of salaries; payment of bills
- 2.5 Control of assets
- 2.6 Disposal of Assets
- 2.7 Accounting policies (including year-end procedures)
- 2.8 Writing off of debts
- 2.9 Basis of accounting
- 2.10 Submission of budget plans
- 2.11 School resource management
- 2.12 Virement
- 2.13 Audit
- 2.14 Register of business Interests
- 2.15 Purchasing, tendering and contracting requirements
- 2.16 Application of contracts to schools
- 2.17 Central funds and earmarking
- 2.18 Spending for the purposes of the school
- 2.19 Capital spending from budget shares
- 2.20 Leasing
- 2.21 Schools Financial Value Standard (SFVS)
- 2.22 Notice of concern
- 2.23 Banker Schools
- 2.24 Fraud

#### 3. INSTALMENTS OF BUDGET SHARE; BANKING ARRANGEMENTS

- 3.1 Cash Advances to schools
- 3.2 Bank Interest
- 3.3 Budget Shares for closing schools
- 3.4 Bank accounts
- 3.5 Borrowing by Schools
- 3.6 Cash Imprest Accounts

June 19

4.	THE TREATMENT OF SURPLUSES AND DEFICIT BALANCES ARISING IN RELATION TO
	BUDGET SHARES

- 4.1 Balances
- 4.2 Surplus balances
- 4.3 Deficit balances and planned deficit balances
- 4.4 Surplus and deficit balances of closing schools
- 4.5 Borrowing
- 4.6 Prudential Borrowing
- 4.7 Supporting Schools with Financial Difficulties
- 4.8 Loans Schemes

#### 5. INCOME

- 5.1 Income from lettings
- 5.2 Income from fees and charges
- 5.3 Income from fund raising activities
- 5.4 Income from the sale of assets
- 5.5 Other Income
- 5.6 Purposes for which income may be used

#### 6. THE CHARGING OF SCHOOL BUDGET SHARES

- 6.1 General provision
- 6.2 Circumstances in which charges may be made
- 6.3 GENERAL TEACHING COUNCIL

#### 7. TAXATION

- 7.1 Value Added Tax
- 7.2 Schools and Construction Industry Tax Scheme

#### 8. THE PROVISION OF SERVICES AND FACILITIES BY THE AUTHORITY

- 8.1 Provision of services from centrally retained budgets
- 8.2 Provision of services bought back from the authority using delegated budgets
- 8.3 Service level agreements and contracts
- 8.4 Teachers' Pensions

#### 9. PRIVATE FINANCE INITATIVE

#### 10. INSURANCE

- 10.1 Insurance cover
- 10.2 Insurance cover voluntary aided schools

#### 11. SUSPENSION OF FINANCIAL DELEGATION

#### 11.1 Suspension of Financial Delegation

#### June 19

#### 12: MISCELLANEOUS

- 12.1 Right of access to information
- 12.2 Data Protection
- 12.3 Liability of Governors
- 12.4 Governors' expenses
- 12.5 Responsibility for legal costs
- 12.6 Health and Safety
- 12.7 Right of attendance for Chief Finance Officer
- 12.8 Delegation to new schools
- 12.9 Special Educational Needs
- 12.10 Child Protection
- 12.11 School Meals
- 12.12 Whistleblowing

#### 13. RESPONSIBILITY FOR REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE

- 13.1 Funding
- 13.2 Defining Capital
- 13.3 Voluntary Aided Schools
- 13.4 Capital Works

#### 14. COMMUNITY FACILITIES

- 14.1 Introduction
- 14.2 Consultation with the Local Authority financial aspects
- 14.3 Funding agreements Local Authority powers
- 14.4 Other prohibitions, restrictions and limitations
- 14.5 Supply of financial information
- 14.6 Audit Arrangements
- 14.7 Treatment of Income and Surpluses
- 14.8 Health and Safety Matters
- 14.9 Insurance
- 14.10 Taxation
- 14.11 Banking
- 14.12 Extended Schools

June 19

#### ANNEX A

Sefton Schools

#### **ANNEX B**

Powers and Responsibilities of Schools Forum

#### **ANNEX C**

Role of School Governors

#### ANNEX D

Guidance on Unofficial Funds

#### **ANNEX E**

**Procurement Rules** 

#### **ANNEX F**

Format of Budget Deficit recovery plan

#### **ANNEX G**

Model Charge Card Policy

#### **ANNEX H**

**Prudential Borrowing** 

#### **ANNEX I**

**VAT Guidance** 

#### ANNEX J

Insurance Schemes

#### **ANNEX K**

Guide to Governor Expenses

#### ANNEX L

Confidential Reporting Policy – "Whistleblowing"

#### **ANNEX M**

CIPFA Code of Practise – Capital Expenditure Items

#### ANNEX N

Extended Schools – Financial Arrangements

#### **ANNEX Q**

RESPONSIBILITY FOR REDUNDANCY AND EARLY RETIREMENT COSTS

#### ANNEX R

Glossary of Terms

June 19

#### THE OUTLINE SCHEME

**SECTION 1: INTRODUCTION** 

- 1.1 The Funding Framework: Main Features
- 1.1.1 The funding framework which replaces Local Management of Schools is set out in the legislative provisions in sections 45-53 of the <u>School Standards and Framework Act</u> 1998.
- 1.1.2 Under this legislation, local authorities determine for themselves the size of their schools' budget and their non-schools' education budget although at a minimum, an authority must appropriate its entire Dedicated Schools Grant to their schools' budget. The categories of expenditure which fall within the two budgets are prescribed under regulations made by the Secretary of State, but included within the two, taken together, is all expenditure, direct and indirect, on an authority's maintained schools, except for capital and certain miscellaneous items. Authorities may deduct funds from their schools' budget for purposes specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State under s.45A of the Act (the centrally retained expenditure). The amounts to be deducted for these purposes are decided by the authority concerned, subject to any limits or conditions (including gaining the approval of their Schools Forum or the Secretary of State in certain instances) as prescribed by the Secretary of State. The balance of the schools' budget left after deduction of the centrally retained expenditure is termed the Individual Schools Budget (ISB). Expenditure items in the non-schools' education budget must be retained centrally (although earmarked allocations may be made to schools).
- 1.1.3 Authorities must distribute the ISB amongst their maintained schools using a formula, which accords with regulations made by the Secretary of State, and enables the calculation of a budget share for each maintained school. This budget share is then delegated to the governing body of the school concerned, unless the school is a new school which has not yet received a delegated budget, or the right to a delegated budget has been suspended in accordance with s.51 of the Act. The financial controls within which delegation works, are set out in a scheme made by the authority in accordance with s.48 of the Act and regulations made under that section. All proposals to revise the scheme must be approved by the Schools Forum, though the authority may apply to the Secretary of State for approval in the event of the forum rejecting a proposal or approving it subject to modifications that are not acceptable to the authority.
- 1.1.4 Subject to any provision made by or under the scheme, governing bodies of schools may spend such amounts of their budget shares as they think fit for any purposes of their school\* and for any additional purposes prescribed by the Secretary of State in regulations made under s.50 of the Act. (\*Section 50 has been amended to provide that amounts spent by a governing body on providing community facilities or services under section 27 of the Education Act 2002 are treated as if they were amounts spent for the purposes of the school (s50(3A) of the Act.)
- 1.1.5 An authority may suspend a school's right to a delegated budget if the provisions of the authority's financial scheme (or rules applied by the scheme) have been substantially or persistently breached, or if the budget share has not been managed satisfactorily. A school's right to a delegated budget share may also be suspended for other reasons (schedule17 to the Act)
- 1.1.6 Each authority is obliged to publish, each year, a statement setting out details of its planned Schools Budget and other expenditure on children's services, showing the amounts to be

June 19

centrally retained and funding delegated to schools. After each financial year the authority must publish a statement showing out-turn expenditure.

- 1.1.7 The detailed publication requirements for financial statements are set out in directions issued by the Secretary of State. A copy of each year's budget and outturn statement should be made easily accessible to all schools.
- 1.1.8 Regulations also require a local authority to publish their scheme and any revisions to it on a website, accessible to the general public, by the date that any revisions come into force, together with a statement that the revised scheme comes into force on that date.

#### 1.2 The Role of the Scheme

- 1.2.1 This scheme sets out the financial relationship between the Local Authority and the maintained schools that it funds. It contains requirements relating to financial management and associated issues, which are binding on both the Local Authority and on the schools.
- 1.2.2 Overall responsibility for the administration of the Council's financial affairs rests with the Head of Corporate Resources as the "proper officer" for the purposes of section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972, and the financial arrangements will in turn be monitored by the department through the Internal Audit section
- 1.2.3 The scheme covers all community, nursery, voluntary, foundation, community special or foundation special schools and pupil referral units (PRUs) maintained by the authority. When schools alter their status in the new framework this will not affect coverage since the schools remain the same schools only in a different category and the schools' governing bodies will remain the same corporate bodies
- 1.2.4 The schools which the Authority will be maintaining are listed for information in <u>ANNEX A</u> to the scheme.

#### 1.3 Publication of the scheme

- 1.3.1 The whole statement is available online. If schools or Governors do not have access to the internet, please contact Schools' Finance e-mail: <a href="mailto:schoolfunding@sefton.gov.uk">schoolfunding@sefton.gov.uk</a> and a hard copy will be made available.
- 1.3.2 The hyperlink for the scheme is below:

http://www.seftonschools.co.uk/sefton-services/schools-finance/fair-funding-scheme.aspx

#### 1.4 Revision of the scheme

- 1.4.1 All proposed amendments to the Scheme for Financing Schools document will be subject to a full consultation period with all school governing bodies and any other identified stakeholders.
- 1.4.2 All proposed revisions must be submitted to the Schools Forum for final approval. Only school forum members representing maintained schools can approve scheme changes.
- 1.4.3 Where the Schools Forum decision differs from the Local Authority proposed revision the DfE

June 19

will be asked to adjudicate.

1.4.4 It is also possible for the Secretary of State to make directed revisions to schemes after consultation. Such revisions become part of the scheme from the date of the direction.

#### 1.5 Roles and Responsibilities

- 1.5.1 The Local Authority is responsible for maintaining the schools covered by the scheme, and this includes the duty of defraying all the expenses of maintaining them (except in the case of a voluntary school where some of the expenses are, by statute, payable by the Governing Body). Part of the way an authority maintains schools is through the funding system put in place under sections 45 to 53 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998
- 1.5.2 Schools Forums have an important role under the current funding regulations. Not only will they continue to have their consultative role in relation to the local distribution of school funding, they will also be able to decide on certain proposals from their Local Authority, which currently have to come to the Secretary of State for decision.
- 1.5.3 The roles and responsibilities of Schools Forums are summarised in ANNEX B of this document.
- 1.5.4 The Governing Body has a strategic role in the financial management in schools and therefore its key responsibilities include:
  - Setting financial priorities through the:
    - o School Development Plan (SDP), also known as the School improvement plan.
    - 3 Year financial plan
    - Deciding on how the school's delegated budget should be spent, in accordance with their SDP and the statutory curriculum requirements laid down by Central Government.
  - Approving and monitoring the annual budget. The full Governing Body may delegate the approval of the first formal annual budget plan to an approved committee
  - Ensuring the budget is managed effectively.
  - Ensuring the school meets all its statutory obligations, and through the Head Teacher, complies with its Local Authority's financial regulations or standing orders.
  - Determining virement and expenditure thresholds.
  - Evaluating the effectiveness of spending decisions.
- 1.5.5 Detailed guidance is set out Role of Governing Body please see ANNEX C.
- 1.5.6 Each Governing Body is asked to consider the extent to which it wishes to delegate its powers to the Head Teacher, and to record its decision (and any revisions) in the minutes of the Governing Body.
- 1.5.7 The Head Teacher is required to keep the Governing Body regularly informed regarding the school's financial affairs and, in particular, to ensure the Governing Body has the information it

June 19

needs to enable it to discharge its duty to determining the school policies and strategy.

- 1.5.8 The main areas of responsibilities are:
  - The framework of accountability and financial probity within the school.
  - The limits of delegated authority.
  - Roles and responsibilities of the Governing Body, its committees, the Head Teacher and other staff involved in the financial administration of the school.
  - Defined procedures for the individual financial systems within the school.
- 1.5.9 The Governing Body must retain responsibility for approving the first formal budget plan of each financial year and should ratify all in year revisions to the spending plan.

#### **SECTION 2: FINANCIAL CONTROLS**

#### 2.1. Application of financial controls to schools

2.1.1 The Governing Body is required to abide by the Local Authority's requirement with regard to the management, monitoring and control of the school budget. These requirements are set out in the Scheme and relevant annexes. These may be supplemented by other information or guidance issued, from time to time, by the Local Authority.

#### 2.2 Provision of financial information and reports

- 2.2.1 The Head of Corporate Resources has a duty to ensure proper administration of Council's financial affairs (Section 151 of Local Government Act 1972). The Head of Corporate Resources is also required to produce annual accounts in accordance with statutory requirements and statements of standard accounting practice and the CIPFA code of practice. Schools must keep accounts that meet the prescribed format of the Local Authority and integrate with those for the Authority. They must also meet the requirements of the DfE Consistent Financial Reporting (CFR) Framework.
- 2.2.2 Schools are required to provide the Local Authority with details of expected and actual expenditure and income, in a form and at times determined by the Local Authority, in order to comply with its own fiduciary responsibilities.
- 2.2.3 The timetable for the submission of the financial returns to the authority will be updated annually in separate guidance notes issued periodically by Schools' Finance.
- 2.2.4 Details of minimum requirements are as follows:

#### Annually

- Approved annual budget by 30 June
- Schools Financial Value Standard by the end of the Financial Year (31 March)
- A copy of the three-year strategic plan by 30 June each year
- Other reporting requirements which only apply to specific groups of schools (e.g. schools in deficit) are itemised elsewhere within the Scheme.

#### Termly

June 19

- Termly Budget Monitoring report presented to your Governing Body with a report showing spend to date against budget plans and a prediction of the year-end balance (surplus/deficit). The deadline in the autumn and spring term is the last Monday of the term.
- Local cheque bank account reconciliations.

#### Monthly

- Bank reconciliations for schools operating a full external bank account
- VAT Summaries and Balance & Reserve Reports for schools operating a full external bank account
- Charge Card reconciliations for those schools operating with a charge card.
- 2.2.5 Accurate and timely financial reporting is an indication of good financial management. Where schools fail to meet the reporting timetables, they are likely to fall short of the Schools Financial Value Standard (SFVS). A repetition of failure to meet reporting requirements, particularly if it affects statutory deadlines would be a reason for the issuing of a notice of concern, or even suspension of delegated management.
- 2.2.6 The Authority will discharge its monitoring role and ensure that schools are effectively managing the resources delegated to them by the monitoring of these returns and by the review of internal audit reports.
- 2.3 Cash Flow Plans (for schools operating their own Bank Accounts where applicable)
- 2.3.1 All schools are responsible for managing their cash flow appropriately. Schools must supply the Local Authority with details of cash flow plans when requested. This enables the Local Authority to plan the transfer of cash to schools.
- 2.3.2 The Governing Body is required to ensure that all accounts, financial records, financial management systems and procedures in use within the school, provide the Local Authority with such information as it may require under the scheme. The Head of Corporate Resources may issue guidance and regard to the format and contents of the school's accounts. The Governing Body must have regard to such advice or guidance, if issued. The Authority adheres to the general accounting principles recommended by the Chartered Institute of Public Finance and Accountancy (CIPFA) and expects schools to adhere to these principles.

#### 2.4 Payment of salaries; payment of bills

- 2.4.1 The Governing Body is required to discharge its powers and duties in compliance with the Local Authority's procedures about payment of salaries (together with certain expenses paid with salaries) and for the payment of invoices and collection of income.
- 2.4.2 This requirement applies whether the school uses the Local Authority's payroll service or not.
- 2.4.3 Schools which chose to enter into a Service Level Agreement with the Local Authority for the provision of Personnel, Payroll and Creditor services will have automatic access to the authority's on-line payroll and creditor systems (including professional advice and support on all personnel, payroll and payment related issues) and will not therefore be required to formally submit detailed analysis of expenditure and personnel data insofar as the information is available from the system

June 19

2.4.4 Schools which wish to make alternative provision for their personnel, payroll and creditor services will be required to provide full details to the authority of their actual expenditure and personnel data on the individual transaction/employee basis at the end of each term.

#### 2.5 Control of assets

- 2.5.1 The Governing Body is responsible for the safe custody and physical control of furniture, equipment, vehicles, plant, stocks and cash. The Governing Body is responsible for the security of the school premises and must ensure that procedures are followed to control assets. Such procedures should include arrangements for keys to be held by responsible persons.
- 2.5.2 Each school will maintain an inventory of its moveable non-capital assets with a replacement value in excess of £1,000, in a form to be determined by the Authority, currently an Excel spreadsheet, Disposal of those assets will be authorised at school level according to the Authority's procedures, (see the Schools Finance Manual). An inventory for assets worth less than £1,000 must be maintained but the form of it will be at each school's discretion.
- 2.5.3 When determining which assets should be recorded, schools should consider items whose value is over, say, £50, except where assets are mobile and desirable but not necessarily expensive, e.g. digital cameras

#### 2.6 Disposal of Assets

- 2.6.1 Local Authority and Buildings Other than Trust Schools the Governing Body is not permitted to dispose of, or lease to another party, any part of the school's Local Authority or buildings. If the Governing Body considers part of the school's Local Authority or building to be surplus to requirements it should discuss the situation with the Head of Education and the Head of Corporate Resources.
- 2.6.2 If a Trust's governing body wished to lease some surplus accommodation/land, held by the trustees, on a long-term basis, this would constitute a disposal. The Trust's governing body would have to ask the trustees to notify the local authority of the proposed purposes for which the accommodation/land is to be used. If the authority objected to this use, the trustees would then have to seek the Adjudicator's consent for the disposal.
- 2.6.3 If the Governing Body identifies items from the school's furniture, non-IT equipment or vehicles as surplus, the items may be disposed of. The principles applying to the disposal of surplus assets are as follows:
- 2.6.4 It should be ascertained, before disposal is contemplated, that the school has no further use for the asset;
- 2.6.5 An independent estimate of the disposal value is obtained, a written record of this should be kept
  - the asset should be offered to sale to other schools
  - the asset should be offered to sale to other Council divisions

June 19

- School's furniture, non-electronic equipment or vehicles unsold assets should be offered to other maintained schools in the Local Authority area;
- to other Council divisions;
- for sale more widely, taking accounts its estimated disposal value and cost of disposal. VAT should be accounted on the sale of assets, unless sold to another Council division; if the asset is believed to have no disposal value, it should be disposed of in the cheapest and cleanest manner.
- 2.6.6 If the asset appears to have an historical interest, it should be offered to the Head of Corporate Resources as a possible museum item before being offered elsewhere.
- 2.6.7 Where the asset was originally purchased by the Local Authority from non-delegated funds, the income from disposal will revert to the Local Authority.
- 2.6.8 Where the asset was originally purchased by the school using delegated funds, or was donated, the income occurring from disposal may be retained by the school.
- 2.6.9 Electronic equipment must be disposed of in compliance with a European Directive Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) which states that all data has to be forensically cleaned and disposed of in an appropriate manner. This directive also requires electrical equipment to be disposed of properly and with minimum harm to the environment.
- 2.6.10The European Union (EU) has developed the WEEE (Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment) Directive to ensure that systems for collection, treatment and recycling of electronic waste will be in place throughout the European Union.

Current legislation requires electrical equipment supplied in the course of business to be safe, i.e. have minimal risk of causing death or injury to persons or domestic animals, or damage to property. Second-hand electrical goods are required to meet the same safety standards as new items.

Schools should therefore, have appropriate procedures in place to comply with the relevant legislation for the sale of electrical equipment to safeguard the Council / school against potential litigation.

2.6.11The Council must ensure that any disposal contractor has the correct license to accept ICT equipment. If the same contractor is collecting hazardous ICT waste, any license must also state this separately. The Environment Agency issues these waste licences. With regard to regular and hazardous waste ICT equipment, the Council must ensure that the following codes are printed on any license:

16-02-04 - ICT Equipment from business property. 16-02-13\* - Hazardous ICT Equipment from business property (i.e. Monitors).

Note – the asterix (\*) denotes hazardous waste.

2.6.12 The Local Authority also has a duty of care to ensure that, as far as possible, an accurate audit trail exists on all decommissioned ICT equipment. This is to ensure that equipment is dealt with in a legal and responsible manner. This audit trail does not only include Data IQ but also any contractor that Data IQ sells material to.

June 19

2.6.13 For example, if a keyboard is broken down into 3 separate materials and sold to three different companies, a school must ensure that each of those companies is identified and has appropriate licenses to accept that material and deal with it in a legal and responsible matter. This becomes especially relevant when dealing with hazardous materials.

#### 2.6.14 Schools are required to ensure:

- a) That any data stored on all decommissioned computers and servers is destroyed
- b) Licensed software remaining on all decommissioned computers and servers is destroyed.

It is for these reasons that the Local Authority requires all hard drives to be completely removed from decommissioned computers and destroyed. If a school gives away a computer with data on it has breached the Data Protection Act, this breach could lead to prosecution.

2.6.15 Under no circumstances, should a hard drive from a decommissioned computer be used for any purpose, (other than be stored as a legal record of data). To confirm this process the Local Authority requires a Certificate of Destruction for hard drives destroyed. For further information please refer to:

http://www.environment-agency.gov.uk/

or AVA for information about local disposal companies that meet the WEE regulations.

#### 2.7 Accounting Policies (including year-end procedures)

- 2.7.1 Schools must abide by procedures issued by the Authority relating to Local Authority accounting policies and year-end procedures.
- 2.7.2 The year-end procedures are set out in the Year-end procedure notes and closedown timetable provided by the Local Authority's Financial Management Service.

#### 2.8 Writing off of debts

- 2.8.1 Governing Bodies have the authority to write-off debts in respect of items of income due to the schools delegated budget and collected by them but which are irrecoverable, in accordance with any procedures specified within the School's Financial Regulations the current write off limit is £500. Such write-offs shall be formally considered and approved by the Governing Body, and recorded in the Minutes of the meeting concerned.
- 2.8.2 The amount of any debt written-off will be borne by the delegated budget of the school involved to which the income was due.
- 2.8.3 The decision to write-off any debt if it proves to be irrecoverable must be made and minuted by the Governing Body. It cannot be delegated. Where the invoice exceeds £500 the Governing Body must notify and obtain the prior approval of the Section 151 Officer, Head of Corporate Resources, before writing off the debt. Several invoices due from the same debtor adding to the total to this amount should be treated in the same manner. All requests for approval should be forwarded through the Schools' Finance Team. All write-offs must be correctly recorded in the accounts by reversal of the original income transaction(s).

June 19

#### 2.9 Basis of accounting

- 2.9.1 Reports and accounts as set out in 2.2 should be provided to the Local Authority on an accrual basis and budget monitoring reports must include an estimated outturn position.
- 2.9.2 Schools are free to use any accounting services provider or accounting software they think reasonable, providing any reports are submitted to the Local Authority in the required format.

#### 2.10 Provision of Formula Budget Allocation

- 2.10.1 By no later than the 28th February prior to the beginning of each multi-year budget period, the Authority will provide the Governing Body with a statement of the school's budget share.
- 2.10.2 The budget share statement will also contain information as required by Section 251 of the Schools Standards and Framework Act 1998, the Authority will inform each maintained school of any central government grant income paid via the Local Authority for the remaining financial years covered by the multi-year budget period. The Local Authority may issue additional budget estimates from time to time.
- 2.10.3 The Local Authority will require schools to submit a financial forecast covering each year of a multi-year period for which schools have been notified of budget shares beyond the current year by the 30th June (1st May for deficit budget plans).
- 2.10.4 The intention of this forecast is to:
  - Show that schools are looking at longer term financial planning.
  - Identify to the Local Authority potential budgetary problems in future years.
- 2.10.5 The Governing Body is not permitted to set a budget which plans for a deficit at the end of the financial year, except where the Authority has authorised such a budget, see accordance with section 4.
- 2.10.6 If a Governing Body submits a multi-year budget plan which shows the school going into deficit in the second or third year of the budget plan, the budget plan must be accompanied by a plan from the school showing how it intends to avoid or deal with the forecast deficit.
- 2.10.7 The school's formal annual budget plan must be approved by the Governing Body or a committee of the Governing Body and Head Teacher of the School.

#### 2.11 School Resource Management

2.11.1 Schools must seek to achieve effective management of resources, to optimise the use of their resources, and to invest in teaching and learning, taking into account the Authority's purchasing, tendering and contracting requirements. (See section 2.15 below)

It is for Head Teachers and Governors to determine at school level how to secure more effective management of resources.

There are significant variations in efficiency between similar schools, and so it's important for schools to review their current expenditure, compare it to other schools, and think about how to make improvements. The DfE government website publishes a range of benchmarking tools,

June 19

available to all schools, to analyse their spending and performance, compared against other schools, both locally and nationally. This can help Governors and Head Teachers towards assessing how effective they are managing their own school resources and to seek best practice across a range of financial and performance indicators through investigation and collaboration with similar sized schools, who seem to be managing their resources and performance at a higher level.

#### 2.12 Virement

- 2.12.1 Virement is an administrative device that provides a degree of flexibility to the budget that is required to deal with changing circumstances and/or unexpected developments. Virement means the transfer of monies from one budget head to another.
- 2.12.2 Provided overall spending is contained within the total delegated budget, the Governing Body may approve transfers of budget between budget headings. The Governing Body is required to establish and approve a written policy relating to virements. This policy should set criteria for virement, whether or not the power to vire is delegated to a sub-committee or the Head Teacher, and if so, the financial threshold above which delegation would not apply.
- 2.12.3 The policy should include provision for the Governing Body to vire sums from the school budget into non-delegated headings of 'earmarked' expenditure.

#### 2.13 **Audit**

- 2.13.1 Schools are required to co-operate and provide access to all school records to both Local Authority Internal Auditors and External Auditors appointed by the Local Authority.
- 2.13.2 The Local Authority Internal Audit process is designed to satisfy the statutory requirements of the relevant Section 151 Officer, namely the Head of Corporate Resources in so far as:
  - Internal financial controls are in place and are operating effectively;
  - Accounts and records have been prepared in accordance with proper accounting practices and statutory requirements;
  - Arrangements are in place to secure the effective management of resources, and to enable reports in the public interest.

#### 2.13.3 Audit Arrangements

- The accounts of the Local Authority maintained schools will be the subject of regular internal audit to review the management of the school's finances and its stewardship of public money on behalf of the Local Authority.
- Internal audit of schools will be based on a risk based and rolling programme. However, it is expected that each school will be subject to an internal audit review approximately once every 3 years.
- Schools must allow internal auditors access, for the purpose of an audit, to such premises, documents and assets, as the internal auditors consider necessary.
- The Governing Body and school staff should provide internal auditors with any explanations they consider necessary, in order to fulfil their duties.

June 19

- The Head Teacher should consider and respond promptly to recommendations in audit reports and report to the Governing Body on the results of audits and any subsequent actions required by the school.
- The Head Teacher should immediately notify the internal auditors of any suspected irregularities involving fraud, bribery, theft and corruption.
- 2.13.4 In relation to external audit all schools come within the Local Authority external audit regime and may be subject to inspection as necessary by the Authority's external auditors.
- 2.13.5 The internal and external audit regimes will not normally be concerned with unofficial schools' funds. However, the S151 Officer will be entitled to make such enquiries as they consider appropriate.
- 2.13.6 The Governing Body may obtain an external audit of its accounts separately from the Authority's internal and external audit process. The cost of such arrangements will be chargeable to the school's budget. The Local Authority's internal and external audit arrangements will not be adjusted to take account the Governors' decisions to commission a separate external audit.
- 2.13.7 The Governing Body is required to provide annually audit certificates in respect of voluntary and private funds held by schools and of the accounts of any trading organisations controlled by the school.
- 2.13.8 Guidance on the management, accounting arrangements and audit of unofficial school funds appears in ANNEX D.

#### 2.14 Register of business interests

- 2.14.1 The Governing Body is required to:
  - Establish and maintain a register which lists for each member of the Governing Body, the head teacher, senior management team and any finance staff any business interest they or members of their immediate family have.
  - Details of any other educational establishments that they govern;
  - Any relationships between school staff and members of the governing body;
  - To keep the register up to date with notification of changes and through annual review of entries.
  - To make the register available for inspection by Governors, Staff and Parents and the Authority and to publish the register, for example on a publicly accessible website.

NB: It is recommended good practice to request a declaration for all school staff to fully mitigate any associated risks, however it is recognised that this is not always possible in larger schools, such schools will need to assess their individual circumstances and form a judgement based on the assessment of risk accordingly.

2.14.2 The register of business interests should be formally referred to prior to the acceptance of quotations or the awarding of contracts. It should be minuted that this procedure has been followed.

June 19

2.14.3 Governors, the Head Teacher and any member of staff must refrain from the decision-making process or taking any action where they or any member of their immediate family has a business or pecuniary interest.

#### 2.15 Purchasing, tendering and contracting requirements

- 2.15.1 Schools must abide by the Authority's financial regulations and accounting procedures in purchasing, tendering and contracting matters. Schools must ensure that they demonstrate value for money and comply with all UK and European legislation and directives when tendering or requesting quotations.
  - Prior to commencing a tender or quotation process, schools must check the current EU thresholds and assess in advance, where relevant, the health and safety competence of contractors, taking account of the authority's policies and procedures.
- 2.15.2 Sections of the Authority's financial regulations and accounting procedures may be dis-applied if they would require schools
  - to do anything incompatible with any of the provisions of the scheme, or any statutory provision, or any EU Procurement Directive;
  - to seek local authority officer counter-signature for any contracts for goods or services for a value below £60,000 in any one year;
  - to select suppliers only from an approved list;
  - to seek fewer than three tenders in respect of any contract with a value exceeding £10,000 in any one year (schools must seek three tenders or quotations in respect of any contract with a value exceeding £10,000 in any one year).
- 2.15.3 The Governing Body / Head Teacher must ensure that they consider quality, economy and efficiency when making agreements for the purchase of supplies, goods, equipment or services.
- 2.15.4 Schools may also seek advice on a range of compliant deals via Buying for Schools see webpage <a href="https://www.gov.uk/guidance/buying-for-schools">www.gov.uk/guidance/buying-for-schools</a>
- 2.15.5 A summary on the application of the Local Authority's contract procedure rules in terms of value of contracts is attached in ANNEX E.
- 2.15.6 Wherever members of staff or the governing body are in doubt as the applicability or interpretation of these rules, they should seek the advice of the authority's Procurement Team

#### 2.16 Application of contracts to schools

- 2.16.1 Schools have the right to opt out of Local Authority arranged contracts except where the scheme provides otherwise.
- 2.16.2 The scheme may provide otherwise for:
  - Contracts which schools have agreed to be covered in respect of services for which funding was delegated by the authority prior to 1 April 1999;
  - Certain contracts in the scheme as approved by the Secretary of State for services for which funding has been delegated after 1 April 1999, irrespective of the agreement of

June 19

schools.

 Governing bodies are empowered under paragraph 3 of schedule 1 to the Education Act 2002 to enter into contracts, in most cases they do so on behalf of the Local Authority as maintainer of the school and the owner of the funds in the budget share. Contracts may be made solely on behalf of the Governing Body, when the Governing Body has clear statutory obligations – for example, contracts made by aided or foundation schools for the employment of staff.

#### 2.17 Central funds and earmarking

- 2.17.1 The Local Authority is authorised to make sums available to schools from central funds, in the form of allocations which are additional to and separate from the schools' budget shares. Such allocations should be subject to conditions setting out the purpose or purposes for which the funds may be used: and while these conditions need not preclude virement (except, of course, where the funding is supported by a specific grant which the authority itself is not permitted to vire), this should not be carried to the point of assimilating the allocations into the school's budget share.
- 2.17.2 Such allocations might, for example, be sums for Special Educational Needs (SEN) or other initiatives funded from the central expenditure of a Local Authority's Schools Budget or other Local Authority budget.
- 2.17.3 This devolved funding is to be spent only on the purposes for which it is given, or on other budget heads for which earmarked funding is given, and is not vired into the budget share. There should be an accounting mechanism for schools to be able to demonstrate that this requirement has been complied with.
- 2.17.4 Earmarked funds must be returned to the authority if not spent within any period stipulated by the authority over which schools are allowed to use the funding.
- 2.17.5 The Local Authority is barred from making any deduction, in respect of interest costs to the authority, from payments to schools of devolved specific or special grant

#### 2.18 Spending for the purposes of the school

- 2.18.1 Governing bodies are authorised to spend budget shares for the purposes of the school, subject to the provisions of the scheme. The Authority may prescribe additional purpose for which expenditure may be incurred from the school budget. The Secretary of State may also prescribe such additional purposes.
- 2.18.2 The Governing Body may not incur expenditure from the school budget for purposes which are properly the responsibility of other agencies.
- 2.18.3 By virtue of section 50(3A) (which came into force on 1st April 2011), amounts spent by governing bodies on community facilities or services under section 27 of the Education Act 2002 will be treated as if spent for any purposes of the school.

Under s.50 (3) (b) the Secretary of State may prescribe additional purposes for which expenditure of the budget share may occur. He has done so in the School Budget Shares (Prescribed Purposes)(England) Regulations 2002 (SI 2002/378), which have been amended by the School Budget Shares (Prescribed Purposes)(England)(Amendment) Regulations 2010

June 19

(SI 010/190). These allow schools to spend their budgets on pupils who are on the roll of other maintained schools.

#### 2.19 Capital spending from budget shares

- 2.19.1 Capital spend is money spent to acquire, improve or upgrade physical assets such as buildings and machinery which provides benefits for a period exceeding one year. Such expenditure includes work to the school site, playing fields and buildings, and some equipment and vehicles. It can also relate to software upgrades for computer equipment.
- 2.19.2 The definition of capital expenditure, as set out in accounting guidelines for local authorities (Code of Practice on Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice) can be summarised as follows:

#### 2.19.3 In respect of Council assets:

- · Acquisition, reclamation or laying out of land
- Acquisition, construction, preparation or replacement of roads, buildings and other structures
- Acquisition, installation or replacement of movable or immovable plant, machinery, apparatus, vehicles and vessels
- Enhancement of land or buildings:
  - 1. Which lengthens substantially the life of the asset
  - 2. Which increases substantially the open market value of the asset
  - 3. Which increases substantially the extent to which the asset can be used for a function of the local authority
- 2.19.4 The Council applies a de-minimis limit, below which, items of expenditure are not capitalised. This is £2,000 for schemes funded from Devolved Formula Capital and £10,000 for other expenditure on capital from the revenue budget. The de-minimis rule of £2,000 for schemes funded from DFC, also applies to Voluntary Aided schools (excluding Fees and VAT). The VA schools receive a separate allocation of DFC and Basic Needs Capital funding paid through their respective faith Body. The Governors of VA schools and their faith bodies are responsible for Capital spending on their schools, but on occasion, may work with the Local Authority where joint funding on common schemes across all schools is considered more cost effective.
- 2.19.5 Governing bodies may use their budget shares to meet the cost of capital expenditure on the school premises. This includes expenditure by the Governing Body of a voluntary aided school on work which is their responsibility under paragraph 3 of Schedule 3 of the SSAF Act 1998. The Local Authority stipulates that if there is expected capital expenditure from the budget share the Governing Body must notify the Local Authority and that it must take into account any advice from the Head of Education as to the merits of the proposed expenditure if it exceeds the figure of £15,000.
- 2.19.6 If the premises are owned by the authority, or the school has voluntary controlled status, then the Governing Body should seek the consent of the authority to the proposed works, but such consent can be withheld only on health and safety grounds.
- 2.19.7 The reason for these requirements is to help ensure compliance with the current School Premises (England) Regulations 2012 legislation.

June 19

2.19.8 These requirements would not affect expenditure from any capital allocation made available by the Authority outside the delegated budget share.

#### 2.20 Leasing

- 2.20.1 The Governing Body may finance the acquisition of equipment by entering into a leasing agreement as an alternative to outright purchase. The asset must be obtained from a supplier approved by the Council's Procurement team.
  - 1) The value is less than the Council's level for de-minimis capital expenditure, currently £10.000
  - 2) The Council's Legal Service has approved documentation prepared by the supplier.

#### 2.21 Schools Financial Value Standard (SFVS)

- 2.21.1All local authority maintained schools (including nursery schools and Pupil Referral Units (PRUs) that have a delegated budget) must demonstrate compliance with the Schools Financial Value Standard (SFVS) and complete the assessment form on an annual basis. It is for the school to determine at what time in the year they wish to complete the form.
- 2.21.2 Governors must demonstrate compliance through the submission of the SFVS assessment form signed by the Chair of Governors. The form must include a summary of remedial actions with a clear timetable, ensuring that each action has a specified deadline and an agreed owner. Governors must monitor the progress of these actions to ensure that all actions are cleared within specified deadlines
- 2.21.3 All maintained schools with a delegated budget must submit the SFVS form to the local authority before the end of the Financial Year (31 March)each year

#### 2.22 Notice of Concern

- 2.22.1 The Local Authority may issue a notice of concern to the Governing Body of any school it maintains where, in the opinion of the Head of Corporate Resources and the Head of Education, the school has failed to comply with any provisions of the scheme, or where actions need to be taken to safeguard the financial position of the Local Authority or the school.
- 2.22.2 Such a notice will set out the reasons and evidence for it being made and may place on the Governing Body restrictions, limitations or prohibitions in relation to the management of funds delegated to it. These may include:
  - A requirement for relevant staff to undertake appropriate training to address any identified weaknesses in the financial management of the school;
  - A requirement for an appropriately trained/qualified person to chair the Finance Committee of the Governing Body;
  - Placing of a condition on the schools to provide timely monthly accounts to the Local Authority;
  - Termly financial monitoring meetings at the school attended by Local Authority officers;
  - A requirement for the Governing Body to buy into a Local Authority's financial management systems and Finance service level agreement; and
  - Imposing restrictions or limitations on the way a school manages extended school

June 19

- activity funded from within its delegated budget share for example by requiring a school to submit income projections and/or financial monitoring reports on such activities.
- Amendment to the school scheme of delegation in relation to the levels of permitted expenditure (both revenue and capital)
- All contracts, leases and licences to be renewed or let require approval of the Head of Education.
- 2.22.3The notice will clearly state what these requirements are and the way in which and the time by which such requirements must be complied with. The notice will also include the required outcome in order for the notice to be withdrawn. It will also state the actions that the authority may take where the Governing Body does not comply with the notice, which may include the removal of delegation.
- 2.22.4 It is proposed that under section 2.22.2 above, the following restrictions also apply: where the school is in deficit, with all new appointments to be agreed by the Local Authority in advance of the post being advertised.
- 2.22.5 The notice of Concern must be agreed by the S151 Officer and Head of Education,
- 2.22.6 The proposals should contain justification for the issue of a notice, together with the suggested actions or restrictions. A small group of officers from Corporate Services and Education involving School Improvement (Schools causing concern group), would agree the reasons why the notice is being recommended and the outcomes that need to be achieved. A sub group of the Schools Forum may be convened to address any dispute that may arise between the Authority and the School, to resolve any aspect of the notice.
- 2.22.7 The circumstances in which a notice of financial concern might be issued would include:
  - A school having consistently large balances and failing to implement plans for reducing these, except in circumstances outside their control.
  - Schools in deficit: failure to take appropriate and timely action to address the deficit and to keep the Authority informed of progress in achieving the recovery plan.
  - Schools failing to complete the SFVS as required.
  - Audit outcome: Failure to take appropriate and timely action following an Audit report identifying significant issues in relation to the financial management.
  - Failure to comply with provisions of the Scheme for Financing Schools.
  - A School due to close or amalgamate
  - A School converting to Academy Status

# 2.23 Teacher Training Schools / School Clusters – leading schools involved in banking shared funds

- 2.23.1 A banker school is where any grant funding received meant for several schools (e.g clusters) is held by one school.
- 2.23.2 The grant needs to be kept separately in a different fund in the school's accounting system and extracted from the CFR report. The entire year-end balance is not reported as belonging to the school.

June 19

- 2.23.3 The banker school would need to reflect **their** proportion of the year-end balance of the grant in their year-end accounts. The banker school is also responsible for giving the individual schools information on their share of the balances so that these can form part of their CFR return at year-end. They would not need to transfer cash.
- 2.23.4 If you become a banker school, the school will need to notify Schools Finance as soon as possible.

#### 2.24 Fraud

2.24.1 All schools must have a robust system of controls to safeguard themselves against fraudulent or improper use of public money and assets.

The Governing Body and Head Teacher must inform all staff of school policies and procedures related to fraud and theft, the controls in place to prevent them; and the consequences of breaching these controls. This information must also be included in induction for new school staff and governors.

The Local Authority has produced a model Fraud & Theft policy and this can be found at:

http://intranet.smbc.loc/our-council/counter-fraud.aspx

#### SECTION 3: INSTALMENTS OF THE BUDGET SHARE; BANKING ARRANGEMENTS

Local Authorities have adopted the CIPFA Code of Practice for Treasury Management. For the purposes of this section, Budget Share includes any place-led funding for special schools or pupil referral units

All schools covered by the scheme are allowed to have external bank accounts into which their budget share instalments, as determined by other provisions within the scheme, will be paid. Schools are not however required to have bank accounts and the scheme therefore permits schools to choose between the following options:

- No bank account (i.e. use of the authority's own banking arrangements)
- A bank account operating on an imprest basis within the authority banking arrangements (as existed under the previous Local Management of Schools arrangements)
- A full bank account outside the authority's own banking arrangements. This is the only option, which involves the transfer of budget shares into school accounts by instalments.

Schools with their own bank account will be entitled to receive instalments of their total Budget Shares, after deduction of approved charges in accordance with Section 6 of the scheme. The instalments will be varied where there is a Service Level Agreement with schools for authority payroll services, in which case the salary and wages element will be excluded from the instalment.

Advances will be made by Bank Automated Credit System (BACS).

June 19

In the event the Budget Shares of schools are adjusted during the financial year, the Budget Share instalments will be amended accordingly.

For those schools operating their own separate bank account - see sections 3.1 to 3.5 below for guidance

#### 3.1 Frequency of Instalments into bank accounts

The local authority will make instalments of the budget share available to Governing Bodies termly. Schools may request monthly budget share instalments; providing this request is received by the authority by 31st January prior to commencement in the following April. Top up payments for pupils with high needs should be made on a monthly basis unless alternative arrangements have been agreed with the provider.

Termly instalments will be made on 15th of April, September and January, or the next working day thereafter. Monthly instalments, where requested in accordance with the paragraph above, will be made on 15th of each calendar month or the next working day thereafter.

#### 3.2 Proportion of budget share payable at each instalment.

The budget share will be made available to schools in accordance with the proportions set out in the following table. Schools will be able to choose whether they receive their budget shares inclusive of estimated pay costs or (where they enter into a service level agreement with the authority for payroll services) net of estimated pay costs.

Instalments will be weighted to take account of the following:

- In year pay awards
- Historical spending patterns for non-employee costs

Example: Proportion of schools' budget share payable into school bank accounts using historical spending patterns.

	PAY COSTS		NON PAY COSTS		
	MONTHLY	TERMLY	MONTHLY	TERMLY	
APRIL	8.30%		10%		
MAY	8.30%		10%		
JUNE	8.30%	41.5%	10%	50%	
JULY	8.30%		10%		
AUGUST	8.30%		10%		
SEPTEMBER	8.30%		8%		
OCTOBER	8.30%	1	8%	32%	
NOVEMBER	8.30%	33.3%	8%	32%	
DECEMBER	8.40%		8%		
JANUARY	8.40%		6%	400/	
FEBRUARY	8.40%	25.2%	6%	18%	

June 19

MARCH	8.40%	6%	

All figures are for illustrative purposes only and relate to percentage of total annual budget share.

#### 3.3 Interest clawback.

The authority will deduct from school budget shares an amount equal to the estimated interest lost by the authority in making available the budget share in advance.

Where the entire budget share is paid to schools on a monthly basis, interest will be charged to schools as follows:

Pay Costs - Interest will be charged daily on the amount paid into the bank account based on the period between the date of the payment and the actual date that salaries are due. The due date for teachers' salaries is the 23rd day of each month and for administrative and clerical staff it is the 15th of each month. For the purposes of the interest calculation it will be assumed that weekly paid staff are paid on the 15th day of each month. The rate of interest charged to schools will be the Bank of England Base Rate applicable at the time that the payments are advanced by the authority

Non-Pay Costs - Interest will be charged on the amount paid into the bank account based on the period between the date of the payment and the 15th day of each month

Where the entire budget share is paid to schools on a termly basis, interest will be charged to schools as follows:

Pay Costs - Interest will be charged daily on the amount paid into the bank account based on the period between the date of the payment and the actual dates in each term that salaries are due. For the April instalment it will be assumed that one fifth of the payment relates to each month of the Summer term (i.e. April to August inclusive), for the September instalment one quarter relates to each month of the Autumn term (September to December inclusive) and for

June 19

the January instalment one third relates to each month of the Spring term (January to March inclusive) The rate of interest charged to schools will be the Bank of England Base Rate applicable at the time that the payments are advanced by the authority

Non-Pay Costs Interest will be charged on the amount paid into the bank account based on the period between the date of the payment and the 15th day of each month within the term.

The authority will make no deduction for interest costs incurred by the authority in relation to payments to schools of devolved specific or special grant (this includes the payment of School Standards Grant, which will be made available to schools by 15th May in each year in which it is applicable).

#### 3.3.1Interest on late budget share payments

In the event that there is a late payment of a budget share instalment, which is the result of an error by the authority, then interest will be added to a school budget share at the Bank of England base rate applicable at the time, based on the period by which the instalment was delayed.

#### 3.4 Budget shares for closing schools

Where a school, which has its own bank account, has secured approval for discontinuation, the Scheme allows for budget shares to be paid into bank accounts on a monthly basis, net of estimated pay costs, even where a different basis had been previously used.

#### 3.5 Bank and Building Society Accounts

Although the authority will encourage schools covered by the Scheme to remain part of the authority's own banking arrangements, the Scheme permits schools to have external bank accounts into which their budget share instalments will be paid. Schools choosing to have external accounts shall be allowed to retain all interest payable on the account. Schools wishing to be part of an authority's banking contract (with or without an imprest account facility) will not be paid interest on the account used.

New external bank accounts can only be opened at the beginning of a financial year. Schools wishing to operate a bank account (including an imprest account) for the first time must give at least two months' notice to the Head of Corporate Resources.

Schools that have a deficit balance at the end of a financial year will not be allowed to open a full bank account at the beginning of the next financial year. Such schools will only be allowed to have a full bank account once any deficit balance is cleared.

If a school opens an external bank account the authority will, if the school desires, immediately take action to transfer to that account, an amount agreed between the school and the authority as representing the estimated surplus balance held by the authority in respect of the school's budget share. A subsequent correction will then be applied when the accounts for the relevant year are closed.

#### 3.5.1 Restrictions on Accounts

Where schools wish to have an external bank account, the authority will provide an approved

June 19

list of banks or building societies, which should be consistent with the authority's Treasury Management policy.

Schools choosing to have their own external bank account will open the account in the name of the school and not the LA. However, if a school has such an account the mandate for that account must provide that the authority is the owner of the funds in the account; that it is entitled to receive statements; and that it can take control of the account if the school's right to a delegated budget is suspended by the authority.

Where schools choose to use an imprest account facility within the authority's banking arrangements, accounts will be set up as sub-accounts of the authority's main account, but identifiable to each school. Under Section 49(5) of the Schools Standards and Framework Act 1998, all monies paid by the LA into school bank accounts remains the property of the LA until spent.

#### 3.6 Borrowing by Schools

- 3.6.1 Overdrafts are not permitted, for schools operating their own bank accounts, and the school must inform their bank that the account is not to be operated in overdraft.
- 3.6.2 Governing bodies may borrow money independently only with the written permission of the Secretary of State. This provision does not apply to prudential borrowing scheme that is run by the Authority (see section 4.6). Queries on the Secretary of State's power should be directed to the Department's School Capital and Buildings Division, which issues periodic advice on the matter.
- 3.6.3 This does not apply to Trustees and Foundations, whose borrowing, as private bodies, makes no impact on Government accounts. These debts may not be serviced directly from the delegated budget, but schools are free to agree a charge for a service which the Trustees or Foundation are able to provide as a consequence of their own borrowing. Governing bodies do not act as agents of the Local Authority when repaying loans.
- 3.6.4 The school may apply to the Local Authority to use Charge Cards in accordance with the approved Card Policy, see section 4.5.1.
- 3.6.5 Borrowing by schools includes the use of finance leases and is not allowable.
- 3.6.6 Schools are permitted to use any scheme that the Secretary of State has said is available to schools without the requirement to seek specific approval, this currently includes the Salix scheme, which is designed to support energy saving.

School governing bodies may borrow money only with the written permission of the Secretary of State where these debts are serviced directly from school budget shares. Borrowing includes the use of finance leases and is not allowable, except for certain schemes approved by the Secretary of State. Currently only Salix loans have such approval.

This provision does not apply to any loan schemes arranged by the authority (see section 4.8)

The scheme does not allow schools to use Credit Cards, which are regarded as borrowing. However, schools are encouraged to make use of procurement/charge cards, as these reduce

June 19

transaction costs and can enable schools to benefit from significant discounts.

#### 3.7 Other Provisions

The authority has issued separately a set of detailed rules and guidance notes to all schools covered by the Scheme - the "School Bank Account Procedure Manual". Schools opening bank accounts will be required to operate them in accordance with the Procedure Manual. The Manual will include the reporting mechanism to the authority regarding expenditure and income relating to their School Budget Share. These procedures must be adopted by schools operating their own Bank Accounts for the Head of Corporate Resources to comply with his/her statutory responsibilities under Section 151 of the 1972 Local Government Act.

The Local Authority has adopted the CIPFA Code of Practice for Treasury Management.

#### 3.8 Cash Imprest Accounts

3.8.1 Guidance on the operation of Petty Cash imprest accounts is contained in the Authority's financial procedure rules (See below).



# SECTION 4: THE TREATMENT OF SURPLUS AND DEFICIT BALANCES ARISING IN RELATION TO BUDGET SHARES

#### 4.1. Balances

- 4.1.1 Surplus Balances Under Fair Funding legislation, schools are permitted to retain surplus balances from one financial period to the next. However, there is an expectation that local authorities put in place a monitoring regime for balances deemed to be excessive.
- 4.1.2 Deficit Balances Schools are required to maintain a balanced budget. It is recognised that circumstances may mean that this is not always possible. Therefore, provision is made for the Authority to agree a "Licenced Deficit".

#### 4.2 Surplus Balances

- 4.2.1 All schools can operate external interest-bearing bank accounts. The Local Authority does have an agreement to pay interest on its Maintained schools' balances, based on the average values of balances held by each school across the year, and applying the average Bank of England Base Rate across the year minus -0.5%. Interest is paid at the year end to schools holding surplus balances as appropriate.
- 4.2.2 Sefton Schools Forum agreed to re-introduce the Excessive Surplus Balance control mechanism with effect from 1 April 2014. The excessive surplus balance control has therefore been in place since this time, and is ongoing, until Schools Forum agree to amend or remove it in consultation with Head Teachers.
- 4.2.3 Schools are considered to hold an "excessive surplus balance" if the reported balance as at 31st March each year exceeds:

June 19

- 12% of the total funding delegated to Primary, Special and Nursery schools at the start of the financial year.
- 8% of the total funding delegated to secondary schools ate the start of the financial year.

(Total funding = all delegated budget share elements plus the pro-rata amount of pupil premium grant).

- 4.2.4 All schools with an excessive surplus balance will be notified by the LA at the end of May each year, when their final school balance position is confirmed as part of the annual closure of accounts process.
- 4.2.5 Any claw-back of Excess balances will be considered by a panel of representatives from Schools Forum and the LA, based on evidence supplied by the school as to the reasons for holding such balances and intentions to reduce them in the following year. There will then be a report taken back to Schools Forum around September, recommending appropriate actions, in time to inform the forthcoming schools formula allocations for the next Financial year.
- 4.2.6 All funding removed from school budgets will be held centrally and protected on a sector by sector basis until decision as to how such monies are to be re-deployed is agreed.
- 4.2.7 The Local Authority following discussions with Schools Forum will determine the deployment of all such funds on an annual basis.

#### 4.3 Deficit balances and planned deficit balances

- 4.3.1 Revenue deficit balances held by schools as permitted under this scheme must be carried forward. The Local Authority cannot write off the deficit balance of any school.
- 4.3.2 The scheme precludes schools to plan for deficits unless approval is granted by the Authority as set out below. Interest will not be charged on licensed deficits, providing the conditions of the approval are met. Interest will be charged on unapproved deficits at 3% above base rate, based on the deficit accruing evenly over the financial year.
- 4.3.3 Where a school had an unanticipated deficit balance at the end of the previous financial year, or where a deficit budget balance is anticipated at the end of the current financial year, the Governing Body may apply to the Authority for permission to recover over more than one year.
- 4.3.4 The Governing Body will make a written application to the Head of Corporate Resources by the 30th April of the current financial year requesting permission to set a deficit budget. The request needs to specify:
  - a) the cause of the deficit;
  - b) the estimated value of the deficit over the multi-year period it relates to;
  - c) the length of time over which the budget recovery is proposed;
  - d) the action the Governing Body proposes to take to rectify the underlying cause of the deficit (recovery plan).

A model recovery plan template is provided at ANNEX F

June 19

- 4.3.5 The Head of Corporate Resources and Head of Education will determine the application taking account of the information provided in the above request from the Governing Body.
- 4.3.6 The maximum recovery period will be three financial years following the financial year in which the application is made;
- 4.3.7 The Head of Corporate Resources and Head of Education will be empowered to attach permission, conditions relating to the governors' management of the school and its budgets; such conditions will be the subject of consultation with the Governing Body and will be binding on the school once agreement has commenced.
- 4.3.8 The Governing Body will be required to provide the Authority at the end of the month, (other than a closing school) a budget monitoring report that covers the period the budget deficit relates to.
- 4.3.9 The Governing Body will be required to purchase the Finance Service Level Agreement at the highest level.
- 4.3.10 Failure to comply with the above may lead to a notice of concern or in extreme circumstances withdrawal of financial delegation.

#### 4.4 Surplus and deficit balances of closing schools

- 4.4.1 In situations where a school closes any balance (whether surplus or deficit) reverts to the Local authority. The authority is not permitted to transfer the balance to any other school even where the school in question is a successor to the closing school, except that a surplus balance transfers to an academy where a school voluntarily converts to academy status under section 4(1) (a) of the Academies Act 2010.
- 4.4.2 The allocation regulations made under Section 47 of the Act allow schools to benefit from additional allocations, which are equal to or less than the balances of relevant closing schools. The same regulations also provide for the abatement of extra funding for new schools, to effectively recognise the deficit of a preceding school, but no such abatement equal to the deficit can be set against the normal funding of the new school.
- 4.4.3 Should any school due to close within the next 12 months have an approved deficit budget, the Local Authority shall reserve the right to implement any of the following controls:
  - a) Issue a "Notice of Concern"
  - b) Suspend the use of any capital funds without prior LA agreement
  - c) Remove delegated powers of financial management
  - d) Any other specific items to be discussed and agreed.

#### 4.5 Charge Cards

- 4.5.1 Schools can apply to the Local Authority to be given the right to use Charge Cards where savings can be obtained from using a card. The model Charge Card policy is provided at ANNEX G.
- 4.5.2 No interest charges should be incurred by the school for use of a Charge Card, with balances requiring to be fully cleared on a monthly basis.

June 19

#### 4.6 Prudential Borrowing

- 4.6.1 Governing bodies may borrow money only with the written permission of the Secretary of State.
- 4.6.2 Schools, when seeking to borrow funds from the Council, can acquire capital assets via the prudential borrowing scheme run by the Local Authority. Applications will only be considered for expenditure on the acquisition, creation or enhancement of assets that can be capitalised (subject to a de-minimus level) providing that it will yield benefit to the Council and services it provides for a period of more than one year. E.g. Improvements to Land and buildings, computer hardware, furniture and equipment.
- 4.6.3 Applications cannot be considered for assets with a capital cost/purchase price less than £10,000 unless it is part of one large scheme where the total costs will exceed £10,000.
- 4.6.4 In all cases, schools will be required to complete an application form and demonstrate that the proposal is affordable, achievable and sustainable.
- 4.6.5 Applications will only be considered for projects, which have received the formal approval of the school's Governing Body. A copy of the resolution should be enclosed with the completed application form. Applications can be submitted and considered in advance of this with signatures of the Head teacher and Chair of the Governing Body. Further details can be found at ANNEX H.

#### 4.7 Supporting Schools in Financial Difficulty

4.7.1 Funding to support schools can only come from a de-delegated contingency for mainstream schools, or a central budget for special schools and PRUs

#### 4.8 Loans Schemes

The authority would be prepared to consider the management of a loans scheme. The loan scheme would be financed from voluntary contributions from school balances into a central loans pool. The contributions would attract interest and interest would be payable on any loans made. The scheme would operate on a self-financing basis and would be subject to sufficient funds being available to meet the loan and interest payment commitments. The authority would specify the following conditions:

- a) that the loan will be repaid within a period of 3 financial years in accordance with an agreed schedule as determined by the Finance and Children's Services Directors.
- b) the purpose and extent of the loan must be agreed in advance between the school governing body and the Head of Corporate Resources and Head of Education.
- c) any consequential costs to the authority arising from these arrangements will charged to the appropriate school budget shares
- d) Loans would not be given for the purpose of reducing a school deficit

#### 4.8.1 Credit union approach

June 19

In the event that a number of schools decide to group together to utilise externally held balances for a credit union approach to loans, they must ensure that such a scheme (if not arranged by the authority) is subject to external audit certification.

#### **SECTION 5: INCOME**

The principle underlying the treatment of income earned by the school is that the school is authorised to retain income except in certain specified circumstances.

Where land is held by a charitable trust, it will be for the school's trustees to determine the use of any income generated by the land.

#### 5.1 Income from lettings

5.1.1 The Governing Body may retain income from lettings of the school premises which would otherwise accrue to the authority, subject to alternative provisions arising from any joint use or PFI/PPP agreements. The Governing Body will be responsible for the cost arising from lettings and may cross-subsidise lettings for community and voluntary use with income from other lettings, provided there is no net cost to the budget share. However, schools are required to have regard to directions issued by the Local Authority as to the use of school premises, as permitted under the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 for various categories of schools.

http://www.legislation.gov.uk/

5.1.2 Income from lettings of school premises should be paid into the delegated account. This provision applies to letting of premises owned by the Authority; it does not apply to lettings of premises owned by other organisations.

#### 5.2 Income from fees and charges

- 5.2.1 Schools can retain income from fees and charges except where a service is provided by the Local Authority from centrally retained funds. However, schools should be required to have regard to any policy statements on charging produced by the Local Authority.
- 5.2.2 Education provided by schools covered by the scheme for its registered pupils shall be provided free of charge if it takes place during school hours except that a charge may be made for individual tuition in playing any musical instrument unless it forms part of the syllabus for a prescribed public examination or is provided as part of the national curriculum

#### 5.3 Income from fund-raising activities

5.3.1 Schools are permitted to retain income from fund-raising activities. Where such activities have created a charge against the school budget, this charge must be reimbursed before the balance of income is credited to any unofficial fund. Note that VAT cannot be recovered on expenditure relating to the fund-raising activities of the unofficial fund, which has been charged to the delegated budget.

#### 5.4 Income from the sale of assets

5.4.1 Schools may retain the proceeds from the sale of assets purchased from the school's revenue

June 19

budget share; the income must be included in the school budget plan and only spent for the purposes of the school. In cases where the asset was purchased with non-delegated funds the proceeds will accrue to the Local Authority. Note that proceeds from the sale of assets are subject to VAT at the standard rate of 20%.

- 5.4.2 The proceeds from the sale of an asset will accrue to the Authority where the asset concerned is land or buildings forming part of the school premises and is owned by the Local Authority.
- 5.4.3 Assets that are leased cannot be sold.

#### 5.5 Other income

- 5.5.1 Income from Delegated School meals (i.e. non-Local Authority contract provision). A school operating their own school meals provision should ensure income and expenditure is accounted for separately in their school accounting system
- 5.5.2 For schools that are included in the school meals contract with Sefton Catering Services, the school collects income on behalf of the Authority as part of the contract. All income must be collected and banked and school meals information provided on a timely basis in standard format, as set out in the contract between the Authority and schools.
- 5.5.3 Administrative procedures for the collection of income

The Local Authority will establish administrative procedures for the collection of income which may vary from time to time in the light of VAT advice.

The authority may wish to take advice from its local Customs Compliance Manager at HMRC as to whether schools should charge VAT on lettings and on the services which lead to fees and charges, and on the VAT implications of fund raising activities and sale of assets.

### 5.6 Purposes for which income may be used

5.6.1 Any income raised from the sale of assets purchased with delegated funds can only be spent for the purposes of the school

#### SECTION 6: THE CHARGING OF SCHOOL BUDGET SHARES

### 6.1 General provision

- 6.1.1 The Local Authority may de-delegate funding for permitted services without the express permission of the governing body, provided this has been approved by the appropriate phase representatives of the Schools Forum. The budget share of a school may be charged by the Local Authority without the consent of the Governing Body only in circumstances set out in 6.2 below. For each of these circumstances the authority would have to be able to demonstrate that the authority had necessarily incurred the expenditure now charged to the budget share
- 6.1.2 The Local Authority shall consult a school as to the intention to so charge, and shall notify a school when it has been done.
- 6.1.3 Schools are reminded that the Local Authority cannot act unreasonably in the exercise of any

June 19

- power given by this scheme, or it may be the subject of a direction under s.496 of the Education Act 1996.
- 6.1.4 The Local Authority shall make arrangements for a dispute procedure for such charges.
- 6.1.5 The Local Authority is required to charge salaries of school based staff to school budgets at actual cost.

### 6.2 Circumstances in which charges may be made:

- 6.2.1 Where premature retirement costs have been incurred without the prior written agreement of the Local Authority to bear such costs (the amount chargeable being only the excess over any amount agreed by the Local Authority).
- 6.2.2 Other expenditure incurred to secure resignations where there is good reason to charge this to the school.
- 6.2.3 Awards by courts and industrial tribunals or out of court settlements against the Local Authority arising from action or inaction by the Governing Body contrary to the Local Authority's advice.
- 6.2.4 Expenditure by the Local Authority in carrying out health and safety work or capital expenditure for which the Local Authority is liable where funds have been delegated to the Governing Body for such work, but the Governing Body has failed to carry out the required work.
- 6.2.5 Expenditure incurred by the Local Authority in insuring its own interests in a school where funding has been delegated but the school has failed to demonstrate that it has arranged cover at least as good as that which would be arranged by the Local Authority. (See also 10.1).
- 6.2.6 The Authority may charge to the school budget the value of any betterment in relation to items replaced or repaired following insurance claims.
- 6.2.7 Expenditure by the authority incurred in making good defects in building work funded by capital spending from budget shares, where the Authority owns the premises or the school has voluntary controlled status.
- 6.2.8 Recovery of monies due from a school for services provided to the school, where a dispute over the monies due has been referred to a disputes procedure, and the result is that monies are owed by the school to the Local Authority, also where a Local Authority debt has not been settled after 30 days and there is clear evidence that the Local Authority has provided a service to the school.
- 6.2.9 Recovery of penalties imposed on the Local Authority by the Board of Inland Revenue, the Contributions Agency, HM Revenue and Customs, Teachers Pensions or regulatory authorities as a result of school negligence.
- 6.2.10 Correction of Authority errors in calculating charges to a budget share (e.g. pension deductions).
- 6.2.11 Additional transport costs incurred by the Local Authority arising from decisions by the Governing Body on the length of the school day; and failure to notify the Local Authority of non-pupil days resulting in unnecessary transport costs.

- 6.2.12 Legal costs that are incurred by the Local Authority because the Governing Body did not accept the advice of the Local Authority (see also section 11).
- 6.2.13 Costs of necessary health and safety training for staff employed by the Local Authority, where funding for training has been delegated but the necessary training not carried out.
- 6.2.14 Compensation paid to a lender where a school enters a contract for borrowing beyond its legal powers, and the contract is of no effect.
- 6.2.15 Costs incurred by the authority in securing provision specified in a statement of SEN where the governing body of a school fails to secure such provision despite the delegation of funds in respect of low cost high incidence SEN and/or specific funding for a pupil with High Needs.
- 6.2.16 Where a school fails to demonstrate the earmarked funding has been spent for the purpose for which it has provided, the Local Authority may charge to the school budget such penalty payments as it may incur; this will apply to any grant funding where failure of a Governing Body to produce adequate records leads to a grant claim by the Local Authority being disallowed. Conversely, over-spending on earmarked funding may be charged to the school budget.
- 6.2.17 Cost of work done in meeting reporting requirements on behalf of those schools not using the Local Authority payroll contractor for example teacher pension remittance and records. The charge will reflect the minimum needed to meet the cost of the Local Authority's compliance with its statutory obligations.
- 6.2.18 Costs incurred by the authority due to submission by the school of incorrect data.
- 6.2.19 Costs incurred by the Local Authority as a result of the Governing Body being in breach of the terms of a contract.
- 6.2.20 Costs incurred by the authority or another school as a result of a school withdrawing from a cluster arrangement, for example where this has funded staff providing services across the cluster.
- 6.2.21 Where a court or tribunal has made an award against the Authority and this has arisen from action or inaction by the Governing Body contrary to the Authority's advice, the value of the award may be charged to the school budget.
- 6.2.22 The Authority may apply charges to the school budget to correct errors in respect of charges applied under other paragraphs of this section.
- 6.2.23 Where delegation has been suspended at a school, the Local Authority may charge for costs as it considers appropriate to the school budget in discharging its responsibilities in running the school.
- 6.2.24 The Local Authority may charge to the school budget expenditure it incurs in the event of a failure on the part of the Governing Body to meet statutory or contractual obligations.
- 6.2.25 In the event a school electing to receive instalments of its budget more frequently than proposed by the Local Authority may charge the school budget consequential administrative costs as it may incur, in addition to costs in relation to forgone interest.

June 19

- 6.2.26 Where consequential costs arise from work to the school premises undertaken by the Governing Body, the Authority may charge these costs to the school budget if costs were not approved in advance by the Local Authority.
- 6.2.27 Where the Authority incurs expenditure due to deficiencies in repairs and maintenance programme undertaken by the Governing Body, the Authority may claim the costs of such expenditure to the school budget.
- 6.2.28 Any costs, or losses in respect of the school budget (including those relating to a bank account operated by the school) arising from negligence, irregularity, inaction or action contrary to the Authority's advice, may be charged to the school budget.
- 6.2.29 Where a dispute arises between the Authority and the Governing Body over payment for services provided to the school and where this dispute has been referred to dispute procedures set out in a service level agreement, with the result that payments are owed by the school to the Authority, the Authority may recover such payments from the school budget.
- 6.2.30 Costs incurred by the authority in administering admissions appeals, where the local authority is the admissions authority and the funding for admission appeals has been delegated to all schools as part of their formula allocation.

### **SECTION 7: TAXATION**

### 7.1 Value Added Tax (VAT)

- 7.1.1 Schools must comply with tax legislation and should follow any relevant procedure issued by the Head of Corporate Resources regarding the following matters:
  - Recording and reclaim of VAT
  - Construction Industries Tax Deduction Scheme
  - Deduction of income tax in relation to staff employed at the school.
- 7.1.2 It should be noted that VAT reclaimed in respect of expenditure charged to a school's budget will be returned to the school. Further guidance on VAT can be found ANNEX I. This guidance includes a list of Agresso income-related Account codes used by schools, along with their relevant VAT rating, and an explanation as to when/how they should be used, for ease of reference and to remove doubt as to treatment for VAT purposes.
- 7.1.3 Returns should be made in accordance with the timetable issued by the Local Authority, particularly as there are financial penalties if returns are not made promptly and accurately. Any penalties that result from errors or delays in submission of school returns will fall to be met from school budgets.
- 7.1.4 Schools are responsible for their own unofficial funds and these do not fall under the Local Authority's VAT registration.

### 7.2 Schools and the Construction Industry Tax Scheme

June 19

- 7.2.1 Construction Industry Tax Scheme (CIS) reporting With effect from 6 April 2007, where a contract is made between the school/governing body and a subcontractor (i.e. not with the Local Authority) CIS reporting is not required. This means that schools can pay the subcontractor direct and do not have to report these invoices via the Tax Officer. (Note also, that if schools' delegated repairs and maintenance or similar budgets are retained centrally, with schools 'calling off' works which are paid for from such centrally retained funds, the exclusion from the Scheme also applies).
- 7.2.2 Where there are major capital works to a school, the contract is usually (but not in all cases) between the subcontractor and the Local Authority. Where this is the case, invoices are paid by the Local Authority out of corporate resources, and will be reported for CIS purposes.

### SECTION 8: THE PROVISION OF SERVICES AND FACILITIES BY THE AUTHORITY

### 8.1 Provision of services from centrally retained budgets

- 8.1.1 The Local Authority shall determine on what basis services from centrally retained funds, including premature retirement costs (PRCs) and redundancy / PRC payments will be provided to schools.
- 8.1.2 The Local Authority must not discriminate in its provision of services on the basis of categories of schools, except where this would be permitted under the School and Early Years Finance Regulations or dedicated schools grant (DSG) conditions of grant.

### 8.2 Provision of services bought back from the authority using delegated budgets

- 8.2.1 The Local Authority will determine from time to time the range of services, for which funding has been delegated. It will also offer schools the chance to buy back support services under a Service Level Agreement. The range of services available are detailed in the Council's SLA Online service, which may be accessed via the schools' intranet. This is open to maintained schools and Academy schools to buy services.
- 8.2 2 The terms of many arrangements with schools to buy services or facilities from the Local Authority is limited to a maximum of three years from the inception of the scheme or the date of the agreement, whichever is the later, and periods not exceeding five years for any subsequent agreement relating to the same services. This may be extended where contracts are for the supply of catering services to five and seven years respectively. Services offered by the Local Authority will be at prices, which are intended to generate income, which is no less than the cost of providing those services. The buy-back costs are shown in the catalogue of available services and schools may select what they need from menus.

### 8.3 Service Level Agreements and contracts

8.3.1 The Local Authority will generally invite schools, during the Spring Term, to indicate which services they intend to buy back from the Council by making an expression of intent to purchase. This will assist both schools and the Council in determining resources for the forthcoming financial year. The Local Authority recognises that schools may choose to buy services from providers outside of the Local Authority and will support schools to implement such decisions effectively. All services will be offered on a three year buy-back basis unless otherwise agreed or stated.

June 19

- 8.3.2 Schools will be asked to confirm which services they are going to buy back from the Council before the end of March each year. All service level agreements must be in place by 31 March to be effective for the following financial year.
  - (If after discussing SLAs in the following Summer Term the Governing Body meeting a school decides to terminate the contract or change the level purchased the termination/change period is 6 months and needs to be communicated to the Authority's Services to School Coordinator)
- 8.3.3 Services offered by the Local Authority are mostly showcased within the Schools SLA online website specific to Sefton. This contains the details of most of the services offered to schools by the Local Authority, along with costs of buy back, and with electronic options to refresh or renew agreements annually or at the end of agreed Service Level arrangements. There will also be a procedure for dealing with complaints and for the termination of agreements.
- 8.3.4 Where the Authority is providing a service on a buy-back basis it will be offered in a way which does not unreasonably restrict schools' freedom of choice among the services available, and where practicable, this will include provision on a service-by-service basis as well as in packages of services.
- 8.3.5 Any services provided by the authority under a three-year service level agreement whether free or on a buy back basis will be reviewed and reminders will automatically be sent to schools, prompting them to note that a service is nearing renewal at least two terms before the end of that agreement.
- 8.3.6 Services which are provided under service level agreements lasting less than three years will be reviewed, and reminders will be sent to schools that service is coming to a closeat least one term before the end of that agreement
- 8.3.7 Most SLA's will be charged to the school's budget on a termly basis in arrears by an internal journal transfer; or where buy back is from an Academy, cost recovery will be by means of an invoice.

### 8.4 Teachers' Pensions

- 8.4.1 To ensure that the performance of the duty on the Authority to supply Teachers Pensions with information under the Teachers' Pensions Regulations 1997, the following conditions are imposed on the Authority and governing bodies of all maintained schools covered by this Scheme in relation to their budget shares.
- 8.4.2 The conditions only apply to governing bodies of maintained schools that have not entered into an arrangement with the Authority to provide payroll services.
- 8.4.3 A Governing Body of any maintained school, whether or not the employer of the teachers at such a school, which has entered into any arrangement or agreement with a person other than the Local Authority to provide payroll services, shall ensure that any such arrangement or agreement is varied to require that person to supply salary, service and pensions data to the Local Authority which the Local Authority requires to submit its annual return of salary and service to Teachers' Pensions and to produce its audited contributions certificate.
- 8.4.4 The Local Authority will advise schools each year of the timing, format and specification of the

June 19

information required. A Governing Body shall also ensure that any such arrangement or agreement is varied to require that Additional Voluntary Contributions (AVCs) be passed to the Authority within the time limit specified in the AVC scheme. The Governing Body shall meet any consequential costs from the school's budget share.

8.4.5 A governing body of any maintained school which directly administers its payroll shall supply salary, service and pensions data to the authority which the authority requires to submit its annual return of salary and service to Teachers' Pensions and to produce its audited contributions certificate. The authority will advise schools each year of the timing, format and specification of the information required from each school. A governing body shall also ensure that Additional Voluntary Contributions (AVCs) are passed to the authority within the time limit specified in the AVC scheme. The governing body shall meet any consequential costs from the school's budget share.

#### **SECTION 9: PRIVATE FINANCE INITIATIVE**

9.1 The Authority reserves the right to issue, from time to time, provisions relating to PFI arrangements. Such provisions will, on issue, become part of this Scheme.

#### **SECTION 10: INSURANCE**

### 10.1 Insurance cover

- 10.1.1 All Local Authority insurances affected under arrangements made by the Head of Corporate Resources. A list of insurance policies arranged by the Authority and their coverage is listed at ANNEX J.
- 10.1.2 Funds for insurance are delegated to schools within the individual school's budget share. Schools are required to ensure that cover relevant to the Local Authority's insurable interest, under a policy arranged by the Governing Body, is at least as good as the relevant minimum cover which would otherwise be arranged by the Local Authority.
- 10.1.3 The level and range of cover will vary from time to time and schools considering arranging their own policies must obtain advice and minimum cover levels from the Head of Corporate Resources before entering negotiations with insurers.
- 10.1.4 Once quotations have been obtained from insurance companies and before entering a contract with an insurance company, schools must inform the Insurance Team. A representative of the Insurance Team will then arrange a discussion with the Headteacher to review the adequacy of the cover and arrange for the financial appraisal of the insurance underwriters. Written advice will then be provided to the school and the Service Manager for Audit and Risk.
- 10.1.5 The school must notify the Head of Corporate Resources as soon as possible of the date when insurance will come into effect. Contingent insurance will then be arranged to cover the possibility of the failure of the school's insurance. The contingent insurance will cover each of the major areas of risk and details can be obtained on request.
- 10.1.6The evidence required to demonstrate parity of cover should be reasonable, not place an undue burden upon the school, nor act as a barrier to the school exercising their choice of supplier.

June 19

### 10.2 Insurance Cover - Voluntary Aided Schools

10.2.1 The Diocese and Arch Diocese are required to provide 10% insurance cover for the premises of voluntary aided schools and the Local Authority provides 90% insurance cover for the value of the building and insurance for unfixed contents. The 90% LA insurance funding has now been delegated to schools and both Diocese have arranged for schools to be covered under Diocese Umbrella Insurance arrangements for their associated schools.

### **SECTION 11: SUSPENSION OF FINANCIAL DELEGATION**

### 11.1 Suspension of Financial Delegation

- 11.1.1 Governing bodies and Head teachers are required to manage their delegated budgets with due propriety and to the standards of stewardship required for public money. If they fail to do so the authority will be entitled to take the following action:
  - Give advice
  - Issue warnings
  - Take other direct remedial action in accordance with the Scheme for Financing Schools
- 11.1.2 The Local Authority will consider the Suspension of a Governing Body's right to a delegated budget where: -
  - There is evidence of substantial or persistent failure to comply with any requirements applicable under the Scheme for Financing Schools.
  - There is evidence of financial mismanagement, where the Governing Body is not managing
    the appropriation or expenditure of the sum put at their disposal for the purposes of the
    school in a satisfactory manner.
  - There has been mismanagement of the educational affairs of the school.
- 11.1.3 Where delegation is withdrawn, the following conditions will apply:
  - The Local Authority will give at least one month's notice of the suspension to the Governing Body and the Headteacher.
  - The authority will withdraw delegation before the expiry of the period of notice in an emergency situation, but must provide immediate written notification and justification of the action to the Secretary of State.
  - The Governing Body has a right of appeal to the Secretary of State against withdrawal of delegation where the grounds are either failure to comply with the Scheme or financial mismanagement, but not in the case of mismanagement of the educational affairs of the school.
- 11.1.4 Where a school has been the subject of an inspection, which identified the school as being in need of special measures, the authority is empowered to suspend the Governing Body's right to a delegated budget subject to conditions specified in section 17 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.
- 11.1.5 Schools will continue to have limited delegation as laid down in para.4 of schedule 15 to that Act. The Authority will be responsible for ensuring that the school budget is not overspent, and the following procedures will apply to schools where delegation has been withdrawn:

June 19

- When financial delegation is suspended, schools operating a bank account may, in certain circumstances, also have the cheque book facility suspended, and the school may be required to transfer to the Council's central debtor, creditor and banking systems.
- The school bank account will be frozen and any balance retained in the bank account under the control of the Authority. However, interest accruing to the account may be used to support the financial plans of the school.
- A limit on a school's Authority to incur expenditure (this limit will normally be restricted to £1,000) and other financial processes to be followed will be set down in a school-specific agreement document produced by the Authority. The document will define the roles and responsibilities of both school based staff and the designated Local Authority monitoring and support officers.

### **SECTION 12: MISCELLANEOUS**

### 12.1 Right of access to information

- 12.1.1 In addition to specific requirements listed elsewhere in the Scheme, Governing Bodies are required to supply all financial and other information which might reasonably be required to enable the authority to satisfy itself as to the school's management of its delegated budget share, or the use made of any central expenditure by the Authority (e.g. earmarked funds) on the school, within timescales prescribed by the Local Authority.
- 12.1.2 The keeping of accounts, financial records and prime documents should be in a suitably secure place and condition and for such periods of time as specified.
- 12.1.3 Schools must not mix official funds (monies due to and from the Local Authority) with unofficial school funds or any other voluntary funds (e.g. School Fund, PTA) which should always be kept and accounted for separately.

#### 12.2 Data Protection

12.2.1 Governing Bodies are required to ensure that all data held in the school are kept in a manner which complies with the provision of the Data Protection Acts 1984 and 1998and with the revised Data Protection Act 2018. The 2018 Act covers statutory provision around data held by schools, relating to staff and pupils, and offers advice on obtaining data; storing data; sharing data; and how personal data may be used. Schools need to ensure they have a purpose for holding information and that those whose information is kept, i.e staff and pupils, have a right of access to it, and can be assured of its safekeeping.

### 12.3 Liability of Governors

- 12.3.1 As the Governing Body is a corporate body, Governors of maintained schools will not incur personal liability in the exercise of their power to spend the delegated budget share provided they act in good faith. This is covered under the terms of s.50 (7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.
- 12.3.2 An example of behaviour which is not in good faith is the carrying out of fraudulent acts.

June 19

Where a Governing Body is any doubt about the legality of a proposed course of action, it must seek advice from the Local Authority.

### 12.4 Governors' expenses

- 12.4.1 Under schedule 11 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, only allowances in respect of purposes specified in regulations may be paid to governors from a school's delegated budget share.
- 12.4.2 Payments can only be paid in respect of expenditure necessarily incurred for the purposes of enabling the person to perform any duty as a governor. This would not include payments to cover loss of earnings for attending meetings.
- 12.4.3 Should the Secretary of State appoint additional governors to a school under Special Measures, the Governors Body is not permitted to pay these governors expenses duplicating those paid by the Secretary of State.
- 12.4.4 The scheme allows the Local Authority to delegate to the Governing Body of a school, funds to meet governors' expenses, where the school does not yet have a delegated budget. A guide to Governors expenses is provided at <u>ANNEX K.</u>

### 12.5 Responsibility for legal costs

- 12.5.1 Legal costs incurred by the Governing Body, although the responsibility of the Local Authority as a part of the cost of maintaining the school (unless they relate to the statutory responsibility of aided school governors for buildings), may be charged to the school's budget share, unless the Governing Body acts in accordance with the advice of the Authority.
- 12.5.2 Where there is a conflict of interest between the Local Authority and the Governing Body, such that the Local Authority's lawyers could not appropriately advise or represent the school, a request should be made in advance to the Head of Education for separate legal representation. The Head of Education and the Head of Corporate Resources will determine if separate legal representation is appropriate.

### 12.6 Health and Safety

12.6.1 Governing bodies are required to have due regard to duties placed on the Local Authority in relation to health and safety, and the Authority's policy on health and safety matters in expending the school's budget share.

### 12.7 Right of attendance for Chief Finance Officer

- 12.7.1 Governing bodies are required to permit the Head of Corporate Resources, or any officer of the Authority nominated by the Head of Corporate Resources, to attend meetings of the Governing Body at which there areany agenda items relevant to the exercise of her or his responsibilities. The Local Authority will give prior notice of such attendance unless it is impracticable to do so.
- 12.7.2 The Head of Corporate Resources attendance shall normally be limited to items that relate to issues of probity or overall financial management and shall not be regarded as routine.

### 12.8 Delegation to new schools

June 19

12.8.1 The Local Authority, may, at its discretion, delegate selectively and optionally, to the governing bodies of schools which have yet to receive delegated budgets.

### 12.9 Special Educational Needs

12.9.1 Schools must use their best endeavours to seek to secure the special educational needs of their pupils when spending their formula budget share.

### 12.10 Child Protection

12.10.1 Schools are required by the scheme to make provision, where applicable, for staff to attend child protection case conferences and other related events.

#### 12.11 School Meals

12.11.1 The Governing Body has delegated responsibilities for the provision of school meals. When discharging these duties, it must have due regard for the Local Authority's policies on school meal provision as set down in the School Meal Service guidance that can be found in the Services to School handbook.

#### 12.12 Whistleblowing

12.12.1 The procedure to be followed by persons working at a school or school governors who wish to complain about financial management or financial propriety at the school, and how such complaints will be dealt with are set out in ANNEX L.

#### SECTION 13: RESPONSIBILITY FOR REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE

#### 13.1 Funding

- 13.1.1 The Local Authority will continue to delegate all revenue funding for repairs and maintenance to schools as part of the School Budget Share. Only capital expenditure is to be retained by the Local Authority. Schools are also in receipt of devolved formula capital (DFC) grant to carry out work that can be defined as capital.
- 13.1.2 The de-minimis level the authority intends to use for the definition of capital expenditure is as outlined in section 2.19.4 above

### 13.2 Defining Capital

13.2.1 Illustrative examples of capital expenditure items in line with the DfE interpretation of the CIPFA code of practice are included at <u>ANNEXM</u>.

### 13.3 Voluntary Aided Schools

13.3.1 For voluntary aided schools, the liability of the Authority for repairs and maintenance (met by delegation of funds through the budget share), is the same as for other maintained schools, and no separate list of responsibilities is necessary for such schools. Eligibility for capital grant from the Secretary of State for capital works at voluntary aided schools depends on the de-

June 19

minimis limit applied by DfE to categorise such work. For Voluntary Aided schools, all repairs and maintenance up to £10,000 (£2,000 (excluding fees and VAT) for schemes funded through DFC) should be paid from the delegated budget. The exceptions to this are playing fields and changing rooms, which remain the responsibility of the Local Authority. The boundaries of playing fields however are the responsibility of the Governors.

### 13.4 Capital Works

13.4.1 In exercising its responsibilities for repairs and maintenance the Governing Body are required to have regard to such provisions of the Local Authority's Asset Management Plan related to the school.

### **SECTION 14 COMMUNITY FACILITIES**

#### 14.1 Introduction

- 14.1.1 Schools that choose to exercise the power conferred by s.27 (1) of the Education Act 2010 to provide community facilities will be subject to a range of controls: -
- 14.1.2 Regulations made under s.28 (2), if made, can specify activities, which may not be undertaken at all under the main enabling power. The school is obliged to consult with the Local Authority and have regard to advice from the Local Authority. The Secretary of State may issue guidance to governing bodies about a range of issues connected with exercise of the power, and a school must have regard to that.
- 14.1.3 However, under s.28 (1), the main limitations and restrictions on the power will be:
  - a) Those contained in schools' own instruments of government, if any; and
  - b) Any prohibitions, restrictions and limitations made elsewhere in the Sefton Scheme for Financing Schools.
- 14.1.4 This section of the scheme does not extend to joint-use agreements, transfer of control agreements, or agreements between the Authority and schools to secure the provision of adult and community learning.
- 14.1.5 Mismanagement of community facilities funds can be grounds for suspension of the right to a delegated budget.

### 14.2 Consultation with the Local Authority – financial aspects

- 14.2.1 Changes made by the Children and Families Act 2014 mean that schools no longer need to consult the Local Authority when establishing community facilities under Section 27 of the Education Act 2002. Nor do they have to have regard to advice given to them by the Local Authority
  - However, as public bodies, they are expected to act reasonably, and this includes consulting those affected by decisions that they make.
- 14.2.2 Schools are reminded that they are required to seek advice from the Authority before exercising their community facilities power. The following process should be followed when a school wishes to consider using its community facility powers.

June 19

- 14.2.3 The school should notify the Head of Corporate Resources in writing of their intention to consider using the Governing Bodies Community Facilities Powers. The notification should include details of the proposed use of the powers and any third-party involvement.
- 14.2.4 The Head of Education, or their representative, will respond to the school's notification. They will arrange a mutually convenient date for the Head of Education, or their representative, to meet with the school to discuss the proposals and provide advice in accordance with the requirements set down in this scheme for financing schools. The Authority cannot levy a charge for the advice given.

### 14.3 Funding Agreements – Local Authority powers

- 14.3.1 The provision of community facilities in many schools may be dependent on the conclusion of a funding agreement with a third party, which will either be supplying funding only, or supplying funding and taking part in the provision. A very wide range of bodies and organisations are potentially involved.
- 14.3.2 Any such proposed agreement should be submitted to the Local Authority in writing for its comments; and must give the Local Authority a maximum of 6 weeks to respond. The formal notice should include a statement of purpose and a business plan for the proposed use of the community facilities power. The Local Authority cannot impose a right of veto on such agreements, either directly or through requiring a right to countersign the agreement. However, if an agreement has been, or is to be, concluded against the wishes of the Local Authority, or has been concluded without informing the Local Authority, and which in the view of the Authority is seriously prejudicial to the interests of the school or the Local Authority, then that may constitute grounds for suspension of the right to a delegated budget. Schools are required to inform the Local Authority what action has been taken following Local Authority advice.

### 14.4 Other prohibitions, restrictions and limitations

14.4.1 The Governing Body should endeavour to protect the financial interests of the Authority. The Authority may require that in a specific instance of use of the community facilities power, the Governing Body concerned shall make arrangements to protect the financial interests of the Authority. Arrangements for protection may include the setting up of a limited company formed for the purpose, or obtaining indemnity insurance for risks associated with the project in question, as specified by the Local Authority. Guidance on the setting up of companies is contained in the School Financial Regulations and Guidance. Section 28 provides that the exercise of the community facilities power is subject to prohibitions, restrictions and limitations in the scheme for financing schools.

### 14.5 Supply of financial information

- 14.5.1 Schools that exercise the community facilities power must provide the Local Authority, every six months, with a summary statement, showing the income and expenditure for the school arising from the facilities in question for the previous six months and on an estimated basis, for the next six months.
- 14.5.2 The Local Authority, on giving notice to the school that it believes there to be cause for concern as to the school's management of the finances of the community facilities power, will require such financial statements to be supplied every three months and, if necessary require the submission of a recovery plan for the activity in question.

June 19

### 14.6 Audit Arrangements

- 14.6.1 The school must grant access to the school's records connected with exercise of the community facilities power, in order to facilitate internal and external audit examination of relevant income and expenditure.
- 14.6.2 Schools are required, to ensure that funding agreements contain adequate provision for access by the Authority to the records and other property of those persons held on the school premises, or held elsewhere insofar as they relate to the activity in question, to enable the Authority to satisfy itself as to the propriety of expenditure on the facilities in question.

### 14.7 Treatment of Income and Surpluses

- 14.7.1 Schools will be allowed to retain all net income derived from community facilities except where otherwise agreed with a funding provider, whether that is the Local Authority or some other person.
- 14.7.2 Schools will be able to carry such retained net income over from one financial year to the next as a separate community facilities surplus, or, subject to the agreement of the Local Authority, at the end of each financial year, transfer all or part of it to the budget share balance.
- 14.7.3 If the school is a community or community special school, and the Local Authority ceases to maintain the school, any accumulated retained income obtained from exercise of the community facilities power reverts to the Local Authority unless otherwise agreed with a funding provider.

### 14.8 Health and Safety Matters

- 14.8.1 The School will be responsible for ensuring health and safety provisions are met in respect of the community facilities.
- 14.8.2 The Governing body has responsibility for the costs of securing the Disclosure Barring Service to ensure the clearance for all adults involved in community activities taking place during the school day. Governing bodies would be free to pass on such costs to a funding partner as part of an agreement with that partner.

#### 14.9 Insurance

- 14.9.1 It is the responsibility of the Governing Body to ensure adequate arrangements are made for insurance against risks arising from the exercise of the community facilities power, taking professional advice as necessary. The school should seek the Authority's advice before finalising any insurance arrangement for community facilities.
- 14.9.2 The Local Authority may undertake its own assessment of the insurance arrangements made by a school in respect of community facilities, and if it judges those arrangements to be inadequate, make arrangements itself, and charge the resultant cost to the school.

### 14.10 Taxation

14.10.1 Schools should seek the advice of the Local Authority and the Authority's Customer

June 19

Compliance Manager at HMRC on any issues relating to the possible imposition of Value Added Tax on expenditure in connection with community facilities; including the use of the Local Authority VAT reclaim facility.

- 14.10.2 If any member of staff employed by the school or Local Authority in connection with community facilities at the school is paid from funds held in a school's own bank account (whether a separate account is used for community facilities or not), the school is likely to be held liable for payment of income tax and National Insurance, in line with Inland Revenue rules.
- 14.10.3 Schools should follow Local Authority advice in relation to the Construction Industry Scheme where this is relevant to the exercise of the community facilities power.

### 14.11 Banking

- 14.11.1 Schools should make banking arrangements in accordance with section 3.4 of this scheme. A school may have just the one account, provided there are adequate internal accounting controls to maintain separation of funds.
- 14.11.2 Schools may not borrow money without the written consent of the Secretary of State. This requirement does not extend to monies lent to schools by the Local Authority.

#### 14.12 Extended Schools

14.12.1 Where schools provide community facilities as part of the Extended Schools Programme they should be accounted for in accordance with the guidance given at ANNEX N.

This is the formal document underpinning the financial relationship between schools and the Authority. If you have any queries or require clarification please contact Schools Finance, e-mail <a href="mailto:schools.finance@sefton.gov.uk">schools.finance@sefton.gov.uk</a> or telephone 0151 9343260

For staff employed under the community facilities power, the default position is that any costs must be met by the governing body, and can be funded from the school's delegated budget if the governing body is satisfied that this will not interfere to a significant extent with the performance of any duties imposed on them by the Education Acts, including the requirement to conduct the school with a view to promoting high standards of educational achievement. Section 37 now states:

- (7) Where a local education authority incurs costs—
- (a) In respect of any premature retirement of any member of the staff of a maintained school who is employed for community purposes, or
- (b) In respect of the dismissal, or for the purpose of securing the resignation of any member of the staff of a maintained school who is employed for those purposes, they shall recover those costs from the governing body except in so far as the authority agrees with the governing body in writing (whether before or after the retirement, dismissal or resignation occurs) that they shall not be so recoverable.
- (7A)Any amount payable by virtue of subsection (7) by the governing body of a maintained school in England to the local authority may be met by the governing body out of the school's budget share for any funding period if and to the extent that the condition in subsection (7B) is met.
- (7B)The condition is that the governing body are satisfied that meeting the amount out of the

June 19

school's budget share will not to a significant extent interfere with the performance of any duty imposed on them by section 21(2) or by any other provision of the Education Acts.

(9) Where a person is employed partly for community purposes and partly for other purposes, any payment or costs in respect of that person is to be apportioned between the two purposes; and the preceding provisions of this section shall apply separately to each part of the payment or costs.

June 19

ANNEX A

### <u>List of Local Authority Maintained Schools – Updated as at 01.04.2019</u>

### Maintained Nursery Schools

Cambridge Nursery
Crossens Nursery
Greenacre Nursery
Sand Dunes Nursery

### **Maintained Primary Schools**

Ainsdale St John's CE Primary School

AintreeDavenhillPrimary School

**All Saints Catholic Primary School** 

**BedfordPrimary School** 

**BirkdalePrimary School** 

**Bishop David Sheppard CE Primary School** 

**ChristChurch CE Primary School** 

**English Martyr's Catholic Primary School** 

FarnboroughRoadInfant School

FarnboroughRoadJuniorSchool

**Forefield Community Infant and Nursery** 

School

**ForefieldJuniorSchool** 

FreshfieldPrimary School

**Great CrosbyCatholicPrimary School** 

**GreenParkPrimary School** 

**HattonHillPrimary School** 

HolyFamilyCatholicPrimary School

HolyRosaryCatholicPrimary School

HolySpiritCatholicPrimary School

**Hudson Primary School** 

Kings MeadowPrimary School

LanderRoadPrimary School

LarkfieldPrimary School

**LinacrePrimary School** 

**LinakerPrimary School** 

**Lydiate Primary School** 

MarshsidePrimary School

**MellingPrimary School** 

**NethertonMossPrimary School** 

**NorthwayPrimary School** 

NorwoodPrimary School

Our Lady of CompassionCatholicPrimary

School

Our Lady of LourdesCatholicPrimary School

**Our Lady of Walsingham Catholic Primary** 

School

Our Lady Queen of PeaceCatholicPrimary

School

Our Lady Star of the SeaCatholicPrimary

School

RedgatePrimary School Rimrose Hope CE Primary School **Springwell Park Primary School** St Benedict's Catholic Primary School St Edmund's and St Thomas' Catholic Primary School St Elizabeth's CatholicPrimary School St George's Catholic Primary School St Gregory's CatholicPrimary School St Jerome's CatholicPrimary School St JohnBoscoCatholicPrimary School St John's CE Primary School, Crossens St John's CE Primary School, Waterloo St Luke's CE Primary School, Formby St Luke's Halsall CE Primary School St Mary's CatholicPrimary School St Monica's CatholicPrimary School St Nicholas' CE Primary School St Oswald's CE Primary School St Patrick's CatholicPrimary School St Philip's CE Primary School, Litherland St Philip's CE Primary School, Southport St RobertBellarmineCatholicPrimary School St Teresa's Catholic Infant and Nursery School St William of YorkCatholicPrimary School **SummerhillPrimary School** The GrangePrimary School ThomasGrayPrimary School Trinity St Peter's CE Primary School

#### **Maintained Secondary Schools**

**UrsulineCatholicPrimary School** 

ValewoodPrimary School WaterlooPrimary School WoodlandsPrimary School

Christ The King Catholic High School and Sixth Form Centre
Holy Family Catholic High School
Maricourt Catholic High School
MeolsCopHigh School
Sacred HeartCatholicCollege
SavioSalesianCatholicCollege

#### **Maintained Special Schools**

Crosby High Special School MerefieldSpecialSchool NewfieldSpecialSchool PresfieldSpecialSchool RowanParkSpecial School

### **Maintained Pupil Referral Units**

June 19

JIGSAW PRU- KS1/KS2 IMPACT PRU- KS3/KS4

**ANNEX B** 

### Schools forum powers and responsibilities

A summary of the powers and responsibilities of schools forums revised 2018.

Function	Local authority	Schools forum	DfE role
Formula change (including redistributions)	Proposes and decides	Must be consulted [voting restrictions apply - see schools forum structure document] and informs the governing bodies of all consultations	Checks for compliance with regulations
Movement of up to 0.5% from the schools block to other blocks	Proposes	Decides	Adjudicates where schools forum does not agree local authority proposal
Contracts (where the local authority is entering a contract to be funded from the schools budget)	Proposes at least one month prior to invitation to tender, the terms of any proposed contract	Gives a view and informs the governing bodies of all consultations	None
Financial issues relating to:  • arrangements for pupils with special educational needs, in particular the places to be commissioned by the	Consults annually	Gives a view and informs the governing bodies of all consultations	None

Function	Local authority	Schools forum	DfE role
local authority and schools and the arrangements for paying top-up funding			
<ul> <li>arrangements for use of pupil referral units and the education of children otherwise than at school, in particular the places to be commissioned by the local authority and schools and the arrangements for paying top-up funding</li> <li>arrangements for early years provision</li> <li>administration arrangements for the</li> </ul>			
allocation of central government grants			
landMinimum funding guarantee (MFG)	Proposes any exclusions from MFG for application to DfE	Gives a view	Approval to application for exclusions
Carry forward a deficit on central expenditure to the next year to be funded from the schools budget	Proposes	Decides	Adjudicates where schools forum does not agree local authority proposal

Function	Local authority	Schools forum	DfE role
Any brought forward deficit on de-delegated services which is to be met by the overall schools' budget.	Proposes	Decides	Adjudicates where Schools forum does not agree local authority proposal
De-delegation for mainstream maintained schools for:	Proposes	Maintained primary and secondary school member representatives will decide for their phase. Middle schools are treated according to their deemed status	Will adjudicate where Schools forum does not agree local authority proposal
School improvement			
General Duties for maintained schools  • Contribution to responsibilities that local authorities hold for maintained schools	Proposes	Would be decided by the relevant maintained school members (primary, secondary, special and PRU).	Adjudicates where Schools forum does not agree local

Function	Local authority	Schools forum	DfE role
(please see <u>pre 16</u> <u>schools funding</u> <u>operational guide</u> for more information)			authority proposal
Central spend on and the criteria for allocating funding from:  • funding for significant pre-16 pupil growth, including new schools set up to meet basic need, whether maintained or academy  • funding for good or outstanding schools with falling rollswhere growth in pupil numbers is expected within three years	Proposes	Decides	Adjudicates where Schools forum does not agree local authority proposal
<ul> <li>early years block provision funding to enable all schools to meet the infant class size requirement</li> <li>back-pay for equal pay claims</li> <li>remission of boarding fees at maintained schools and academies</li> <li>places in independent schools for non-SEN pupils</li> <li>admissions</li> </ul>	Proposes	Decides	Adjudicates where Schools forum does not agree local authority proposal

Function	Local authority	Schools forum	DfE role
<ul> <li>servicing of schools forum</li> <li>Contribution to responsibilities that local authorities hold for all schools</li> </ul> Central spend on:			
<ul> <li>capital expenditure funded from revenue – projects must have been planned and decided on prior to April 2013 so no new projects can be charged</li> <li>contribution to combined budgets – this is where the Schools forum agreed prior to April 2013 a contribution from the schools budget to services which would otherwise be funded from other sources</li> <li>existing termination of employment costs (costs for specific individuals must have been approved prior to April 2013 so no new redundancy costs can be charged)</li> <li>prudential borrowing costs – the commitment must have been approved prior to April 2013</li> </ul>	Proposes up to the value committed in the previous financial year and where expenditure has already been committed.  See table four page 31 to 35 for Information on historic commitments. Read establishing local authority DSG baselinesfor more information.	Decides for each line	Adjudicates where Schools forum does not agree local authority proposal

Function	Local authority	Schools forum	DfE role
Central spend on: <ul> <li>high needs block provision</li> <li>central licences negotiated by the Secretary of State</li> </ul>	Decides	None, but good practice to inform forum	None
Scheme of financial management changes	Proposes and consults the governing body and Head of every school	Approves (schools' members only)	Adjudicates where Schools forum does not agree local authority proposal
Membership: length of office of members	Decides	None (but good practice would suggest that they gave a view)	None
Voting procedures	None	Determine voting procedures	None
Chair of schools forum	Facilitates	Elects (may not be an elected member of the Council or officer)	None

June 19

**ANNEX C** 

### **ROLE OF GOVERNORS**

#### Introduction

We often are asked what Governors' financial responsibilities are given that schools are now largely self-managing and responsible for their own budget. We hope you find this short guide useful.

### 1. Finance role of the Governing Body

The Governing Body has a strategic role in the financial management in schools and therefore its key responsibilities include:

- setting financial priorities through the:
  - o School Development Plan (SDP), also known as the School Improvement Plan (SIP)
  - o 3 year financial plan
- The annual budget
  - deciding on how the school's delegated budget should be spent, in accordance with their SDP and the statutory curriculum requirements laid down by government
  - approving and monitoring the annual budget
  - ensuring the budget is managed effectively
  - ensuring the school meets all its statutory obligations, and through the headteacher complies with its Local Authority's financial regulations or standing orders
  - determining virement and expenditure thresholds
  - evaluating the effectiveness of spending decisions.

## 2. Responsibilities – Setting the annual budget (Approving the budget proposed by the Finance Committee)

The Governing Body is responsible for setting your school's budget annually.

The Full Governing Body may delegate the approval of the first formal annual budget plan to an approved committee.

Most schools have a finance or resources committee which reports to the full Governing Body. After governors and the school management team have completed the strategic planning for the next year, the finance committee will review the plan and any options proposed. They will then report back to the full Governing Body with a detailed budget for consideration and approval.

June 19

#### 3. Finance Committee

The finance committee is non-statutory and as such the governors are able to determine their individual requirements and to delegate the financial responsibilities of the Governing Body to one or more committees, if desired.

Terms of reference for the finance committee would normally include:

- i) To provide guidance and assistance to the Headteacher and the governing body in all matters relating to budgeting and finance.
- ii) To prepare and review financial policy statements, including consideration of long term planning and resourcing.
- iii) To consider each year's School Development Plan/Ofsted Action Plan priorities, and present an annual budget to the governing body for approval
- i) To consider each year's School Development Plan/Ofsted Action Plan priorities and to formally approve the first annual budget. (Providing such approval has been delegated to the finance committee by the full governing body see scheme section 1.5.9).
- ii) To monitor the income and expenditure of all public funds (i.e. budget share, Standard Funds, DFC) and report the financial situation to the governing body each term.
- iii) To recommend the level of delegation to the Headteacher for the day-to-day financial management of the school.
- iv) To ensure the audit of non-public funds for presentation to the governing body and to receive, and where appropriate respond to, periodic audit reports of public funds.
- v) To vire funds, if necessary, within the limits set by the governing body.
- vi) Prepare and submit the School's Annual Statement of Internal Controls (SIC) and Best Value (BV) Statement to Governing Body/Local Authority.
- vii) Review and report to full Governing Body plans, outcomes and decisions following annual benchmarking comparative exercise

The finance committee gives your Governing Body an on-going involvement in financial issues. It should arrange to meet frequently enough to discharge its responsibilities (in most schools at least once a term) and should compile reports for the main Governing Body on all areas within the remit of the finance committee. All decisions made must be reported to the next meeting of the main Governing Body, usually via sufficiently detailed minutes.

### 4. Budget Monitoring

Prompt, accurate and up-to-date financial information should be readily available at the appropriate levels within your school. To achieve this, your school will require clearly defined and properly used channels of reporting to the finance committee and Governing Body.

The Finance Committee should meet at least termly to review the income and expenditure against the budget.

### 5. Finance Checklist for Governing Body and Finance Sub Committee Meeting

	Full Governing Body Meeting	Finance Sub Committee Meeting
Summer Term	Approve minutes of subcommittee meeting Monitoring school budget	Review and/or Update     Outturn Statement     CFR (consistent financial reporting)     Report     Financial delegation form, best value statement, petty cash limits and statement of internal control.     Financial roles and responsibilities     Staffing Structures and issues     Expenditure and Income actuals and year end projections     Cash flow     Review pupil number forecasts     Service level agreements and contracts     DFC Expenditure     Set Budget
Autumn Term	Approve minutes of subcommittee meetingRegister of Business Interest UpdatedMonitoring school budget  • Review Budget to date, including forecast to year end position  • Present school fund audited accounts for agreement	<ul> <li>Review and/or Update</li> <li>Expenditure and Income actuals and year end projections</li> <li>Amendments to budget</li> <li>Benchmarking and prepare action plan</li> <li>Staffing issues</li> <li>Financial management competency grids</li> <li>Financial management training requirements</li> </ul>
Spring Term	<ul> <li>Approve minutes of subcommittee meeting Monitoring school budget</li> <li>Review Budget to date, including forecast to year end position</li> <li>Approval of provisional budget for next financial year</li> </ul>	Review and/or Update

June 19

**ANNEX D** 

**GUIDANCE ON UNOFFICAL SCHOOL FUNDS** 

SEFTON METROPOLITAN BOROUGH COUNCIL

**PROCEDURE NOTE** 

**VOLUNTARY FUNDS – SCHOOL FUND GUIDANCE.** 

June 19

### Guidance on the Management, Audit and Accounting Arrangements for the School Fund

### Definition.

- In accordance with the accepted definition 'a non-official account or school fund is any fund containing other than official monies of the Local Authority which is controlled wholly or in part by the Head Teacher by reason of his/her employment in a school'.
- Although such funds are not public money, parents and other benefactors are entitled to receive the same standards of stewardship in regard to them.

### Responsibility of Governors.

- Governors have responsibility for the oversight of the management of the Fund.
- The Head Teacher is accountable to them for the good management of the Fund.
- It is recommended that the Governors are kept regularly informed of the condition of the Fund. Therefore, in addition to the annual report required under the Scheme, interim reports should be made. These reports should include details of income received, major items of expenditure and the balance of the Fund supported by certified reconciliations.

### Responsibility of the Head Teacher.

- Ultimately the Head Teacher is responsible for the control of all non-official monies in the school and should therefore ensure that the appropriate standard of stewardship is being applied to the Fund.
- Wherever possible the Head Teacher should delegate the actual operation of the accounts to members of staff. In such instances arrangements should be adequate to ensure control appropriate to the ultimate responsibility.
- The Head Teacher should examine the accounting records periodically to ensure the accuracy
  of the balances. Such examination affords protection to the Head Tteacher and the staff.

### Purpose of the Fund.

- Funds are intended to finance activities that are not generally supported by financial assistance from the Local Authority.
- Income is generally derived from fund raising and voluntary contributions. Official and unofficial monies should not be mixed. Any income, which properly relates to the school's delegated budget, should not be credited to a voluntary fund.
- Expenditure is incurred on extra-curriculum activities, provision of additional equipment and transport, charitable donations and support to financially disadvantaged pupils.
- Expenditure should be appropriate and be for the benefit of the pupils. Inappropriate expenditure
  would include any payments to staff, purchases for the personal use of staff, purchases from
  friends or relatives of staff unless by way of tendering.
- The account may be used to record transactions in respect of recreational school trips / visits.

### Management of the Fund.

- The administration procedures and responsibilities should be clearly documented. There should be adequate division of duties and staff should be made aware of their responsibilities including authorisation of expenditure.
- Unduly large balances should not be built up. As far as possible resources should be spent for the benefit of the pupils in the school at the time the money is raised.
- The accounting year should run for the academic school year.
- Documented policies should be approved for:
  - o Authorisation requirements needed prior to arranging trips.
  - Accounting requirements for school trips

June 19

- o Circumstances under which the Fund can be used to make subsidies or donations.
- o Procedures for allocating free or subsidised places on school trips
- o Procedures for the treatment of surplus cash having regard to the charging regulations.
- Personal cheques should not be cashed through the Fund.
- Personal loans should not be made from the Fund.
- Accounting records and bank stationery should be held securely and access restricted.
- Accounting records should be:
  - Maintained in a permanent format, a ledger or computer spreadsheet, and recorded at the time of the transaction.
  - o Supported by full documentation for all transactions of income and expenditure.
  - Reconciled monthly, to the bank statements and the reconciliation certified by the Head Teacher.
- If the Fund is administered correctly there are grounds to claim that it should not be subject to corporation tax.
- The Fund is not eligible to reclaim VAT on expenditure (unless registered for VAT). However the
  Fund may make purchases through the Local Authority, by issuing an official order for the
  goods, and making payment from the Fund to the delegated account of the cost net of VAT. The
  goods then belong to the Local Authority. This procedure should never be used for personal
  staff purchases or for the fund-raising activities of the School Fund purchases.
- Advances for expenditure should only be made after authorisation from the Head Teacher. Full records should be made at the time of the advance and when the transaction is completed.
- Payment should not usually be made in advance or together with orders because of the possibility of suppliers going into liquidation.
- The Authority's Fidelity Guarantee insurance policy provides cover for the Fund. Where a school
  does not use the Local Authority's insurance services they should ensure similar external
  insurance cover is separately provided.
- The school may consider the likelihood of any other losses such as theft by a third party, or loss
  of deposits due to commercial events. In the first instance these may be expensive in the light of
  any possible risks. In the second the engagement of travel companies who are members of
  regulatory bodies should minimise the risk.

#### **Banking Arrangements.**

- The bank account(s) should be in the name of the Fund and bear the address of the school.
- The terms and conditions pertaining to the bank account(s) should be obtained in writing from the bankers.
- The bank account must be operated in credit at all times.
- Cheques should be crossed and endorsed "account payee only".
- A copy of the bank mandate should be retained.
- Cheques should require two signatories, both of which should be employees of the school. Wherever possible more than two people (but not more than four) should be designated as appropriate signatories, one of these should be the Head Teacher.
- Cheques must not be signed before details of payee and amount have been entered.
- Cheques requiring signature must be presented with adequate supporting documentation to evidence that the goods have been properly ordered and received.
- Funds in excess of day to day requirements or earmarked for specific purposes should be held in an interest-bearing account and arrangements should be made to have the interest paid gross.
- Banking arrangements should be reviewed periodically to ensure that the service and location is satisfactory.

June 19

### Handling of Cash.

- Cash should not be kept on school premises during the school holidays and should be kept to a minimum at all other times, especially overnight.
- Money should be kept in a locked safe or other securely locked place.
- Fund money is listed in the Authority's insurance money policy. However the excess on the policy is currently £500.
- Arrangements should be made to ensure that all income collected is banked promptly and intact.
  Unless such income is used to top up cash floats in which case a reconciliation of banking to
  income less cash retained should be undertaken.
- Payments should be made wherever possible by cheque so reducing the need for cash to be held
- Cash floats should be banked prior to the summer holidays.
- All receipts for school trips/visits and the like should be officially received into the Fund and deposited in the bank no matter how short the period of deposit. Subsequent payments and any refunds to pupils should be made by cheque to accord protection to all concerned.

### **Annual Audit and Statement of Account.**

- An audit should be conducted annually.
- An auditor should be appointed. Suitable appointments would be:
  - Small accountancy firms.
  - o Appointee of the Governors who is independent of the operation of the Fund.
  - A qualified parent.
- In the interests of accountability the auditor should not be an employee of the School nor should "mutual" auditing of accounts be undertaken.
- The auditor should complete an Audit Certificate that should be in a format similar to the Audit Certificate form that has been issued to schools.
- After the audit the Receipts and Payments Account and Reconciliation Statement that should be in formats similar to the Receipts and Payments Account and Reconciliation Statement forms that has been issued to schools, with the year-end bank statement should be presented to the Governors together with the Audit Certificate.
- The Chair of Governors should complete the appropriate section of the Audit Certificate.
- The Head Teacher should ensure that the audited accounts; the Receipts and Payments
  Account and Reconciliation Statement with the final bank statement together with Audit
  Certificate, are copied promptly to the Local Authority after the Governing Body has accepted
  them.

### **Summary of Requirements.**

- The Fund should be kept in accordance with the Guidelines.
- The accounting year should correspond to the academic year.
- A Receipts and Payments Account and reconciliation statement should be prepared annually.
- The Governing Body should appoint an auditor who is independent of the school. The Fund should be audited annually.
- After the audit the Receipts and Payments Account, the Reconciliation Statement with the final bank statement together with the Audit Certificate should be presented annually to the Governors.
- The Chair of Governors should complete the appropriate section of the Audit Certificate.
- A copy of the Receipts and Payments Account, the Reconciliation Statement with the final bank statement together with the Audit Certificate should be sent to the Local Authority.

June 19

• If you need any further advice, regarding this or other matters, Internal Audit (telephone 934-4051) will be pleased to help you.

June 19

### **ABC SCHOOL - SCHOOL FUND**

RECONCILIATION STATEMEN	NT		
SUMMARY OF FUND (RECONC			
Current Account		£	
Reserve Account			
Cash in Hand			
Fund balance as at	- -		
SUMMARY OF RECEIPTS AN		£	
Balance b/f as at		_	
Add total receipts in the year			
Sub total	_		
Less total payments in the year			
Balance as per ledger as at	- -		
Prepared by:	Position:		Date:
Reviewed by:	Position:		Date:
RECONCILIATION STATEMENT			
Balance as per bank statement as at		£	
Add banking(s) not cleared	£		
Sub total Less unpresented cheques	_		

### ABC SCHOOL - SCHOOL FUND

### RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED

Activity	Bal.b/f	Receipts	Payments	Transfers	Bal.c/f
Totals					
Prepared by:				Current a/c	
Position:				Reserve a/c	
Data				Cook hold	
Date:				Cash held	
Reviewed by:					
neviewed by.					
Position:					

Date:		
	Bal c/f	

June 19

**ANNEX E** 

### **Summary of Contract Procedure Rules**

#### General

School staff are bound by the financial regulations, which govern all of the school's financial business, irrespective of the source of funding. Head Teachers and Governing Bodies are responsible for ensuring that procurement within their school is carried out in a professional manner, and that the correct purchasing procedures are followed determined by the total value of the contract

The regulations described below apply to all contracts entered into by the school unless the Governing Body or, in an emergency, one of its Committees with delegated powers, directs otherwise. If such a direction is given, the reasons for it are recorded in the minutes of the meeting of the Governors or of the appropriate Committee.

All contracts to which the directives of the European Union apply shall also be advertised for the purpose of inviting tenders in the official Journal of the European Union (OJEU) (formerly OJEC) (<a href="www.ojec.com">www.ojec.com</a>) in accordance with the relevant EU directive. (These rules may change subject to the UK leaving the European Union)

Current limits above which the EU directives apply as at January 2018

Supplies and Services £181,302 Thresholds are net of VAT.

If a situation arises where this level of contracting is necessary, further advice from the LA will be taken to ensure compliance.

The Central Procurement Team will undertake the relevant Tender Exercise for schools who have chosen to enter into the Central Purchasing SLA.

These instructions with respect to contracts do not apply to contracts with a professional person for the execution of any work in which the personal skill of that person is of primary importance.

### **Competitive Quotations or Tenders**

The following conditions are applicable based on the £ purchase price, including the lifetime of any contract.

Where the estimated value of the goods, service or work is more than £3,000 and less than £10,000, two written quotations should be obtained and evidenced accordingly.

Where the estimated value of the goods, services or works is less than £181,302 but greater than £10,000, schools are required to undertake a mini quotation / tender exercise inviting at least three suppliers to submit written quotations. Evaluation of quotations should be undertaken by two people and evidenced accordingly. This does not apply to tenders for building works being applied for by our advisers who will tender as their professional duties see fit in agreement with the school. A record of all comments and decisions will be kept by school.

June 19

Schools are required to seek officer countersignature or approval for any contracts for goods or services for a value above £60,000 in any one year, however where the Authority has issued a Notice of Concern to an individual school in accordance with paragraph 2.22 then that notice may include notification of a lower value above which officer approval is required

For further guidance go to:

https://www.gov.uk/guidance/buying-for-schools/buying-low-to-medium-cost-things

# (please note that the procurement values for Sefton differ from the DFE recommendations in the link above)

Where the estimated value of the goods, supplies or services is more than £181,302 schools are required to undertake a formal tender exercise.

Tenderers shall be informed that no tender shall be received unless it is enclosed in a plain sealed envelope, which shall bear the word "Tender" followed by the subject to which it relates. It shall not bear any name or mark indicating the sender and such envelope shall remain in the possession of the appropriate person (i.e. Head Teacher) until the time appointed for its opening.

No tender received after the date and time specified in the Tender document should be accepted and considered unless there is clear evidence of it having been posted by first class post at least the day before the tenders were due to be returned.

Where the estimated value of the goods, supplies or services is more than £181,302 the EU Procurement Legislation must be adhered to. The Central Procurement Team will undertake the relevant Quotation / Tender exercise for schools who have chosen to enter the Central Purchasing SLA. The CPU utilise an e-Procurement portal, 'The Chest'.

For schools who have chosen to enter into the Central Purchasing SLA, it is advisable that the school makes use of the Corporate Framework contracts, which contribute to best value.

#### **Submission and Opening of Tenders or Quotations**

Where, an invitation to tender is required the following will apply:

The tender shall be opened in the presence of a Governor and the Head Teacher (or her deputy or other senior member of staff nominated by the Head Teacher for that purpose).

All opened tenders shall be numbered by the Head Teacher and entered in an appropriate register and initialled by the Head Teacher and Governor present at their opening.

Any tender that is for any reason received by the Head Teacher after the time specified for the receipt of tenders shall not be considered unless there is clear evidence of it having been posted by first class post at least the day before the tenders were due to be returned.

No tender shall be amended after it has been received by the Head Teacher.

#### **Evaluation of Contracts**

June 19

The Head Teacher must define award criteria appropriate to the purchase. Award criteria must be designed to secure an outcome giving best value for money for the school. This shall be the most economically advantageous offer, which must be further defined within sub-criteria, which may refer only to relevant considerations. These may include price, service, quality of goods, running costs, technical merit, previous experience, delivery date, cost effectiveness, relevant environmental considerations, aesthetic and functional characteristics (including security and control features), safety, after sales services, technical assistance, disposal at the end of working life and any other relevant matters.

The award criteria and the evaluation criteria to be used must be notified to all of those invited to tender.

#### **Contractual Formalities**

Unless acting within delegated powers no member of the Governing Body enters, either orally or in writing, into any contract on the School's behalf.

The Governing Body may delegate to the Head Teacher acceptance of quotations up to the level agreed within the Delegated Responsibilities documentation and then only if the quotation is the lowest (if payment is to be made by the school) or the highest (if payment is to be received by the school). Quotations more than the sum determined may only be accepted by the Governing Body or by a Committee of Governors to whom that power has been delegated by the Governing Body.

The Governing Body or a Committee of Governors to whom the power to accept tenders has been delegated, may only accept a tender which is other than the lowest (if payment is to be made by the school) or the highest (if payment is to be received by the school) if:

The Governors or Committee (as the case may be) have considered a written report from the Head Teacher specifying reasons for its acceptance, and

The reasons for its acceptance are recorded in the minutes of the meeting of the Governors of the Committee (as the case may be).

Every contract, which exceeds the sum determined by the Governing Body in value or amount and not being a contract requiring extreme urgency (which shall be put in writing as soon as possible) shall be in writing and shall be signed by the Chair of Governors.

Contracts may only be extended where provision for extension was included in the original tender documents.

In all other circumstances an extension of contracts will require written approval of the Chair of Governors following consideration of a written report from the Head Teacher. Extensions shall only be granted in exceptional circumstances if it can be established that this will achieve best value for the school.

For the price of the Central Purchasing Unit SLA, schools have access to centrally negotiated contracts; access to Framework Agreements within other buying organisations; guidance un undertaking Tender Exercises, all of which will assist schools in obtaining Value for Money.

June 19

**ANNEX F** 

# Budget Recovery Plan

June 19

#### INTRODUCTION

This Budget recovery Plan is necessitated by circumstances (outlined below) which, if not acted upon, will result in the budget scenario outlined in **Appendix 1** 

Provide detail.....

These proposals are subject to checking by the Local Authority and approval by the Governing Body.

#### **BACKGROUND**

The school finds itself in this situation for a number of reasons as outlined below:

June 19

		$\sim$	_			
_	_		. 1		_	·

The Governing Body is required to balance the budget, and in drawing up this plan to enable it to do so, I have focused on the following key priorities:

Year one	
Year two	
Year three	
We hope to pay the deficit back by the end of xxxxx	xx as shown in <b>Appendix 2</b> .
Headteacher	Chair of Governors

June 19

Appendix 1:

Budget projections without adjustments as at

June 19

Appendix 2:

Budget projections following the implementation of the recommendations contained within this report.

**ANNEX G** 

#### **Model Charge Card Policy**

Appendix A

#### Application for approval to Obtaining and Operating a school Charge Card to

Name of School:
I hereby confirm that the Governing Body has approved the school obtaining a Charge Card from the Local Authority on
Signed:
Name:
Chair of Governors
Date:
For Local Authority Use Only
I hereby authorise the Governing Body of
Section 151 Officer Sefton MBC

Appendix B

#### **Model Charge Card Usage Policy**

The Governing Body of XXXXXX School has agreed to obtain a Charge Card to be used in connection with spending of the school budget. The Charge Card shall only be used where it is more efficient / effective to obtain goods / services.

The Charge Card shall be managed and used in accordance with the Council's Financial and Contract Procedure Rules and the Schools Charge Card Procedure Manual

The Charge Card shall not be used to:

- procure goods / services from suppliers where the normal ordering / payment system can be utilized
- Circumvent the Council's /School's procurement rules.

The Schools shall keep appropriate records to provide a proper management trail and retain documentation in accordance with the Council's retention policy for financial records.

The Charge Card shall be issued in the name of the Head Teacher of School.

The credit limit shall be:

Single transaction and monthly transaction limits will be set for each card. For Nursery, Primary and Special Schools these limits will be set at £6,000 and £8,000 respectively for each card. For Secondary schools the limits will be £10,000 and £12,000 respectively

#### **Administration of Charge Card**

- 1. The Head teacher must sign a declaration to confirm that he / she understands the conditions of issue and will abide by the approved policy.
- 2. Procedures for the operation of the card shall be clearly documented in the School's Finance Manual.
- 3. The card shall not be used to withdraw cash or purchase foreign currency.
- 4. The card shall be held securely on the premises and access restricted to the card holder. The PIN, password and security code shall not be recorded and / or disclosed to anybody else.
- 5. The bank shall be notified promptly of the loss / theft of the card to avoid liability for any misuse.
- 6. Charge Cards usage shall be limited to transactions where there is a financial saving and evidence of this shall be retained for management purposes.
- 7. The Card Holder will be responsible for downloading monthly statements from the Natwest Cards Online web site. <u>Balances should be fully cleared on a monthly basis</u>.
- 8. Transactions on Charge Cards statement shall be independently checked by the Card Administrator against the transaction documentation and the reconciliation form completed for certification by the Head Teacher. Any discrepancy on the Charge Card statement shall be reported promptly to the Governing Body.
- 9. Due care shall be taken when using the Charge Card for internet and telephone transactions.
- 10. The issuing bank will not honour transactions in excess of the credit limit.

- 11. Expired Charge Cards shall be destroyed and reported to the Local Authority.
- 12. The bank / Local Authority shall be informed in writing to cancel the card when the Head Teacher leaves or the card is no longer required. In such instances, the Charge Card must be destroyed and reported to the Local Authority.
- 13. The Charge Card shall not be used for personal use. Any misappropriate use of the card may lead to disciplinary being action and / or facilities withdrawn.
- 14. The Card holder is authorised to liaise with the bank and copies of all communication shall be retained securely in accordance with the Council's retention policy for financial documentation.
- 15. Any loyalty rewards obtained arising from the use of the Charge Card shall be used for the benefit of the school.

### School Charge Card – template for receipt of a Charge Card

SEFTON MBC		
CORPORATE RESOURCES DEPARTMENT		
CREDIT CARD RECEIPT FOR -		
I confirm that Card No. xxxx xxxx xxxx XXXX and PIN number were supplied to		
on		
Signed		
To be completed by the Cardholder and Administrator		
I confirm receipt of Card No. xxxx xxxx xxxx XXXX and PIN number		
on		
dated December 2018 and agree to abide by the procedures set out.		
Cardholder Signature		
I confirm that I have read the Schools Charge Card Procedure Manual dated December 2018 and agree to abide by the procedures set out.		
Administrators Full Name		
Administrators Signature		
This receipt should be signed and returned to;		
Sharon Garner		
Corporate Resources Department Treasury and Capital Section		
2nd Floor Magdalen House		

ANNEX H

#### PRUDENTIAL BORROWING SCHEME - GUIDANCE FOR SCHOOLS

#### 1 Introduction

1.1 These procedures have been developed to provide clear guidelines to schools when seeking to borrow funds from the council to acquire capital assets.

#### 2 What Applications will be considered?

- 2.1 Applications will only be considered for expenditure on the acquisition, creation or enhancement of assets that can be capitalised (subject to a de minimis level) providing that it will yield benefit to the Council and services it provides for a period of more than one year for example improvements to Land and buildings, computer hardware, furniture and equipment.
- 2.2 Applications cannot be considered for assets with a capital cost /purchase price less than £10,0003 unless it is part of one large scheme where the total costs will exceed £10,000
- 2.3 In all cases, services will be required to complete an application form and demonstrate that the proposal is affordable, achievable and sustainable.
- 2.4 Applications will only be considered for projects, which have received the formal approval of the schools' Governing Body. A copy of the resolution should be enclosed with the completed application form (See Appendix 1). Applications can be submitted and considered in advance of this with signatures of the Headteacher and Chair of the Governing Body.
- 2.5 All applications must in the first instance be submitted to the Corporate Financial Support Services, schools finance team, <a href="mailto:schools.finance@sefton.gov.uk">mailto:schools.finance@sefton.gov.uk</a>

#### 3 How are the annual repayments calculated & repayments made?

- 3.1 The annual repayment cost will be calculated on an annuity basis over the operational life of the asset. The interest rate will be the Public Works Loan Board annuity rate, as at 1 October, in the year of acquisition (see Appendix 2).
- 3.2 No charge will be made in the year of acquisition and first charges would be made in August of the following year, to allow schools time to plan repayments in their budgets (see Appendix 2).
- 3.3 Schools can opt to pay principal for a part year charge in the year of purchase to reduce the overall cost to the service.
- 3.4 The principal outstanding and interest accrued to date can be repaid in full at any time throughout the life of the loan up until the final year.

- 3.5 Schools will be charged via a journal transfer that will be recorded on the AFT document received in the August following the date the loan has been agreed and each subsequent year until the loan is repaid in full.
- 3.6 As the Local Authority finances the capital expenditure in totality, Schools cannot use Devolved Formula Capital (DFC) for prudential borrowing repayments. Any schools that wish to use DFC should request a lower loan in the first instance with a view to financing part of the total cost of the project with DFC.

3 This figure is based on the Council's level for de-minimus capital expenditure, which is subject to annual review.

#### 4.0. Conditions of the scheme

- 4.1 Repayments must be made immediately on receipt of request for payment or further interest becomes chargeable and the full balance of the loan plus interest to the end of the agreed term may become immediately payable.
- 4.2 Funding must be used for the purpose for which the application was made otherwise the full balance plus interest accrued to date will become immediately payable.
- 4.3 The level of schools prudential borrowing is no longer subject to restriction and will be assessed based on the business case provided. As a guideline however, the Local Authority will look very closely at Schools that are proposing to earmark more than 5% of their revenue budget (excluding pupil premium) to service borrowing charges.
- 4.4 The Local Authority will rigorously test each business case and schools will not be permitted to borrow beyond the useful life of the asset being acquired / enhanced as defined by the Council's accounting policies. In addition, where proposals affect the property estate they will be referred to the School Organisation team for endorsement as part of the evaluation.
- 4.5 The schools financial position including previous years closing balance, current years' budget plan and outstanding debts will be considered in the evaluation.
- 4.6 Schools must adhere to any Local Authority guidance to ensure the scheme complies with construction design and management regulations, health and safety requirements and has "landlords" approval to undertake works.
- 4.7 The Local Authority retains the right to refuse any application based on
  - (i) The Council's Treasury Management Strategy and compliance with the Prudential Code, which aims to ensure that capital investment plans, are affordable, prudent and sustainable.
  - (ii) The proposal not being in line with Education asset management objectives.
- 4.8. On all schemes over £0.250m, Schools are required to prepare a brief report to inform the Local Authority of completion of works and any matters arising.

- 4.9. Internal audit will review compliance with the conditions of the prudential borrowing scheme as part of their routine programme of school visits.
- 4.10 It should be noted the Council will demand repayment of the prudential borrowing in full before a maintained school converts to academy status, unless the Council agrees to renegotiate the terms of the loan.

#### 5.0. Sources of information

- 5.1 In all circumstances schools are advised to contact the Head of Corporate Resources, FAO the Treasury Management Group Accountant for advice and indicative rates.
- 5.2 On behalf of Head of Corporate Resources, the Financial Management Team will
  - Calculate the total cost and annual cost of the loan.
  - Undertake modelling to assist with decision making for example the cost of different options.
  - Provide assistance completing the application form.

#### 6.0. How are schemes approved?

All applications will be reviewed in the first instance by the Treasury Management Team and the Schools Finance Team to assess against the scheme conditions. Schools Finance Team will liaise with School Organisation as appropriate. The scheme of delegation for the approval of schemes is

<=£0.100m	Head of Corporate Resources and Head of
	Education
> £0.100m <= £0.250m	Cabinet Member - Regulatory,
	Compliance and Corporate Services,
	Cabinet Member - Children, Schools and
	Safeguarding and Head of Corporate
	Resources and Head of Education
>= £0.250m	Cabinet

- 6.2. For schemes >= £0.250m the Treasury Management Team and Schools Finance Team will prepare a brief Cabinet Report with the recommendation.
- 6.3. The approximate timeline from the receipt of any applications through to approval is typically:

<=£0.100m	1-3 weeks
> £0.1>= £0.250m 00m	3-6 weeks
<= £0.250m	8 – 10 weeks

#### Appendix 1

#### **Schools Prudential Borrowing Business Case Template**

School:	
Description of project / assets to be purchased:	
Justification and benefits of the project:	
Project cost in total (A)	£
Less: funds from other sources (please specify) (B)	
	£
	£
	£
	£
Balance required from Council (A - B)  Expected asset life ( C )	Yrs
Length of loan (D)	Yrs

Estimated annual repayment (as advised by the Local Authority) (E)	£
School budget share (excluding pupil premium) (F)	£
% of revenue budget to be assigned to repayments (E/F)	%
Affordability: what funding / savings / reduction	ns have been identified to build the
repayments into the school's operating budget	<u> </u>
Will the project go ahead if this application is	
unsuccessful?	
Has it been explained to the Governing Body that the repayments would be unavoidable	
commitments for the term of the loan?	
Date of Governing Body Approval	
Signat	ures:
Headteacher:	Date:
Chair of Governing Body	Date:
For Office Use Only:	
Date application received:	
Decision:	

Signed:	Date:	

#### Appendix 2

#### **Illustration of Repayments**

Purchase price	£30,000
Life of asset	5 years
Interest rate	1.67%
Date of purchase (2018/19)	1 <sup>st</sup> June 2018
Annual Charge	£6,411.00
Total Cost	£32,055.00

Financial Year	Annual Repayment £
2019/20	6,411.00
2020/21	6,411.00
2021/22	6,411.00
2022/23	6,411.00
2023/24	6,411.00
Total	32,055.00

<sup>\*\*</sup>Interest rate is based on 1 October and first charges are made in the following financial year from the year of acquisition.



# **VAT GUIDE FOR SCHOOLS**

#### **CONTENTS**

SECTION 1.	INTRODUCTION	2
SECTION 2:	VAT ON EXPENDITURE (INPUT TAX)	5
	VAT Recovery – Evidence Required	5
	Pro forma invoices from suppliers	6
	Private School Fund & Holiday Accounts	6
	Charge Card Transactions	7
	Reimbursement of Petty Cash Expenditure	7
	Organised School Trips & Holidays	7
	The Tour Operators Margin Scheme (TOMS)	8
	Purchases made with Donated Funds	8
	Voluntary Aided Schools	9
	Capital Projects & Devolved Formula Capital	10
	Non-UK VAT – Invoices from other EU countries	11
SECTION 3:	VAT ON INCOME (OUTPUT TAX)	13
	Sale of Educational Materials to pupils	13
	Sale of Musical Instruments	13
	Sale of Laptop Computers to Teachers and Parents	14
	Sale of School Uniforms	14
	Sales of work from classes	14
	Locker Charges to Pupils	15
	Sale of Second-hand goods & equipment	15
	Sale of School Photographs	15

	After Schools Clubs / Extended Schools Projects	15
	Catering	16
	School Lettings	17
	Ticket Sales for Concerts & Performances	19
	Donations Refunds from suppliers	19 19
SECTION 4:	APPENDICES	
	Appendix A Accounting for VAT – Transaction Processing	20
	Appendix B Petty Cash & VAT Recovery	23
	Appendix C Charge Card Transactions	25
	Appendix D VA Schools	26
	Appendix E VAT Categories	30
	Appendix F Income Codes – VAT Liability	33
	Appendix G Adding VAT codes in FMS	37

#### **VAT GUIDE FOR SCHOOLS**

#### **SECTION 1: INTRODUCTION**

Sefton Council is a VAT registered organisation and as such it is required to account for VAT to H.M Revenue & Customs (HMRC) each month on its VAT Return. The VAT Registration No. for the Council is **GB 165 6621 52**.

The purpose of this document is to provide guidance on the Council's VAT accounting procedures, to ensure that: -

- VAT is accounted for correctly in accordance with HMRC's current VAT legislation.
- To minimise the risk of assessments, interest and penalty charges from HMRC, as consequence of errors or non-compliance.

#### **Input and Output Tax**

The Council can recover most of the VAT it incurs on expenditure, from HMRC, via the VAT Return. Therefore, only the net expenditure is charged to school budgets.

**Input Tax** is the VAT the Council incurs on **expenditure**.

The Agresso General Ledger Code for Input Tax is: -VAT1 V1000

The Council is required to charge VAT on some of the income it receives, e.g. teacher's meals. All the VAT collected on income must be paid over to HMRC, via the VAT Return.

**Output Tax** is VAT the Council collects on **income**.

The Agresso General Ledger Code for Output Tax is: - VAT1 V2000

#### **VAT Categories**

There are currently five VAT Categories as detailed below.

Category	Rate	<u>Description</u>	
Standard Rate	20%	The normal rate applied to goods and services unless otherwise rated or exempted.	
Reduced Rate	5%	Please see Appendix E, Page 26, re	
Exempt	0%	circumstances in which lower rates	

Zero Rated	0%	or an exemption applies.
Non-Business or Outside the Scope	0%	Transactions outside the scope of current VAT legislation (e.g. salary payments, grant funding, NNDR payments, & statutory fees)

#### **VAT Codes in FMS**

Code	<u>Description</u>	Letter Code in	<u>Rate</u>		
		FMS_			
Expenditure - Input Tax					
VI2	Vat Exempt	X	0%		
VIS	Standard Rate	V	20%		
VIL	Lower Rated	L	5%		
VIZ	Zero Rated	W	0%		
Income - Output Tax					
VOP	Income Outside the Scope P		0%		
VO2	Vat Income Zero Rated	Z	0%		
VOR	Income Rated	R	20%		
VOE	Income Exempt	Е	0%		
VOL	Income Lower Rated	D	5%		

Please refer to Appendix F Page 29 below, for instructions on how to add new VAT Codes in FMS.

#### **VAT Periods**

The Council is required to submit monthly VAT Returns. Each VAT Period / Accounting Period is a calendar month.

**VAT Assessments & Penalties** 

VAT Inspectors from HMRC visit the Finance Department on a regular basis to examine

records, documents and procedures, to ensure that the Council is correctly accounting for VAT.

If errors are discovered, HMRC issue the Council withan assessment to recoup any VAT

recovered in error or under declared on income. Interest and penalties could also be applied.

HMRC's Penalty Regime

The Penalty Regime, introduced in 2009, allows HMRC to levy a penalty on organisations who

fail to take reasonable care when accounting for VAT.

Penalties are calculated as a percentage of the error value. For example, a penalty of up to 30% could be added onto the value of an error, if HMRC consider it occurred as a result of an

organisation's failure to take reasonable care.

Penalties may be avoided or reduced if HMRC are promptly notified of an error, as opposed to

it being discovered by one of their officers during a VAT Inspection.

To correct errors promptly please contact Ann Riley in Corporate Finance. A persistent

occurrence of the same error would almost certainly result in a penalty.

**Retention of records** 

HMRC require that all accounting documentation should be retained for a period of 6 full

financial years, plus the current year.

**VAT Contact** 

This guide is intended to give an overview of the main VAT issues that affect schools. It is not possible to cover every type of transaction. If further information or clarification is required please

contact:

**Ann Riley, VAT Officer, Corporate Finance.** 

Telephone: 0151 934 4108

E-mail: - ann.Riley@sefton.gov.uk

#### **SECTION 2: VAT ON EXPENDITURE (INPUT TAX)**

The Council can recover most of the VAT it incurs on expenditure from HMRC, via the monthly VAT Return. Therefore, in general only net expenditure is charged to a school's budget.

Recoverable VAT should be charged to the Input Tax code VAT1 V1000

#### See Appendix A for Accounting for VAT on a Suppliers Invoice

#### VAT Recovery – Evidence Required

If you wish to reclaim VAT on a purchase, the transaction must be supported by a VAT invoice from the supplier. The VAT invoice must be addressed to the Council and contain the following information:

#### A Full VAT Invoice

For purchases **over £250** (including VAT) a full VAT invoice is required. It must contain the following details:

- 1. An invoice number.
- 2. The date of supply (this is known as the Tax Point).
- 3. The suppliers name, address and VAT Registration Number.
- 4. The Council's (or school's) name and address.
- 5. The type of supply (sale, hire, rental, etc.).
- 6. A description which identifies the goods or services supplied.
- 7. The quantity supplied and the amount charged for each item (excluding VAT)
- 8. The rate of VAT.
- 9. The total amount payable excluding VAT.
- 10. The rate of any cash discount offered.
- 11. The total VAT payable.

#### A Less Detailed VAT Invoice

For purchases of £250 or less (including VAT) a less detailed VAT invoice is acceptable but it must contain the following details:

- 1. The name and address and VAT Registration Number of the supplier.
- 2. The date of supply.
- 3. The description to identify the goods and services supplied
- 4. The charge made including VAT.
- 5. The rate of VAT.

(Store receipts from retailers are generally accepted as less detailed VAT invoices if they include all the above details).

#### Some types of document are **NOT** valid for VAT recovery purposes, they include: -

- Invoices which charge VAT but do not have a VAT registration number, or those that contain an <u>invalid</u> VAT registration number.
- Pro Forma invoices from suppliers (see over).
- Reminders.
- Statements.
- Invitations to attend seminars & conferences.

A VAT invoice **should never** be amended. If the invoice contains errors please contact the supplier to request a new invoice.

#### **Pro Forma Invoices from Suppliers**

Some suppliers, particularly those who require payment in advance, will issue Pro-Forma Invoices. These documents look like normal VAT invoices but they will have 'This is not a Tax Invoice',' Valid only when receipted', or 'Application for Payment' printed on the document.

The supplier will not issue a Full VAT Invoice, to account for VAT, until he has received the payment in full, from the customer.

HMRC's VAT legislation states that the customer, i.e. the Council or school, is unable to recover VAT on the expenditure before the supplier has issued a VAT invoice to account for VAT.

Consequently, the Council cannot recover any VAT on this type of transaction until the full VAT Invoice is received from the supplier.

Therefore, when processing payments by pro-forma invoice: -

- The gross expenditure should be charged to your budget code.
- Once the VAT invoice is received from the supplier, the VAT element can then be reclaimed via a journal entry adjustment. Please contact your School Finance Officer to arrange this.
- It is important to have a follow up procedure in place for all payments processed on a pro-forma invoice, to ensure the full VAT invoice is obtained from the supplier and VAT recovery is not lost.

#### **Private School Fund and Holiday Accounts**

VAT can only be recovered when purchases are made from the Council's Central Bank Account, a school's local cheque account or a school's External Bank Account.

VAT **cannot** be recovered on purchases made from other bank accounts such as the 'Unofficial School Fund', the PTA, or Pre-and After School Clubs.

(NB, please refer to item on Page 8 headed 'purchases made with donated funds').

#### **Charge Card Transactions**

VAT can be reclaimed on Charge Card purchases when; -

- the goods and services purchased are for the use of the school and
- a valid tax invoice is obtained from the supplier.

A Charge Card statement alone is not sufficient to support the recovery of VAT.

For items less than £250, a less detailed VAT invoice is acceptable providing it contains all the requirements detailed on Page 5.

#### See Appendix C for further details.

#### Reimbursement of Petty Cash Expenditure

A tax invoice must be obtained for all petty cash purchases if VAT is to be reclaimed. There are only a few instances where a tax invoice is not required and they only apply when the transaction is less than £25 including VAT.

These instances are; -

- 1. telephone calls from a public or private telephone;
- 2. purchases through coin operated machines;
- 3. off street parking charges;
- 4. toll charges on roads.

All other petty cash transactions require a VAT invoice. As above, for items less than £250, a less detailed VAT invoice is acceptable providing it contains all the requirements detailed on Page 5.

See Appendix 'B' for further details.

#### Organised School Trips and Holidays

Where visits, trips or holidays are organised for educational purposes and subject to the school being in receipt of a proper VAT invoice, then; -

- 1. the school will be able to recover any VAT incurred on expenditure related to the trip and
- 2. the school will not have to account for VAT on the income received from parental contributions.

This is subject to the following conditions: -

- The Governors/Head Teacher must be satisfied that the trip is to meet educational needs.
  - All the necessary documentation must be held by the school, including a VAT invoice (issued in the name of the school).
  - Payment for the trip must be made from Sefton Council's bank account, the School's External bank account or the School's local cheque account.

VAT cannot be recovered on payments made from an 'Unofficial School Fund' or holiday bank account.

<u>Please Note</u>- Public Transport (including airfares) is Zero Rated and therefore does not include VAT.

#### **Tour Operators Margin Scheme – (TOMS)**

Invoices issued under TOMS do not detail VAT and consequently they include a "hidden" amount of **irrecoverable VAT**. Any tour operator working within TOMS will be unable to issue VAT invoices to schools.

Please ensure you obtain confirmation in advance, from your tour operator, as to whether it operates within TOMS and whether the prices it quotes include irrecoverable VAT.

It is essential for schools to take this into consideration when budgeting for the cost of a school trip and calculating the required parental contributions.

#### Purchases Made by Donated Funds

When a school buys something for which a 'third party' has provided funds, for example when the PTA makes a donation into a school's delegated budget to purchase a new computer, VAT can be recovered, subject to the correct invoicing requirements referred to below:

#### The school must: -

- 1. Place the official order.
- 2. Make the purchase itself,
- 3. Receives the supply of goods or services.
- 4. Receives a tax invoice addressed to the school or the Council
- 5. Makes the payment
- 6. Use the goods and services for the educational purposes of the school
- 7. Retains ownership of the goods and adequate records

However, **VAT cannot be recovered** when a third party, such as the PTA, after school club, or private nursery, pays money into the delegated budget, in order for the school to purchase items on **behalf** of the third party, rather than the school.

**Please Note** – Voluntary Aided Schools should be aware that they cannot recover VAT on purchases which are the responsibility of the governing body, even when those purchases are financed by a donation.

#### Voluntary Aided Schools (VA)

Local Authorities **cannot** recover VAT on any expenditure that is the responsibility of the Governing Body (GB), or which is financed by monies which belong to the GB, such as Devolved Formula Capital (DFC) funding, Lottery Grants and Sports England funding.

This also applies when the expenditure is financed from the school's delegated budget or from donated funds such as the PTA. See Appendix 'D' for full details.

HMRC guidance for Local Authorities (LA) and Voluntary Aided (VA) Schools, issued in February 2013, defined their responsibilities as shown below: -

#### Governing Body (GB) Responsibility – VAT Non-Recoverable

Expenditure which is capital in nature, and relates to:

- The existing buildings (internal and external)
- · Perimeter walls and fences, even if around the playing fields
- Playgrounds
- Fixed furniture, fixtures and fittings including ICT infrastructure

**Except** where it is excluded from the definition of capital expenditure due to it falling below the de-minimis limit, which is currently £10,000 for Sefton Schools, as defined in the Fair Funding: Scheme for Financing Schools, Section 12, Para 12.2.

Non-Recoverable VAT should be coded to your school's cost centre.

#### Local Authority (LA) Responsibility – VAT Recoverable

#### **Expenditure which is capital in nature, and relates to:**

- Expenditure excluded from GB responsibility (above) by virtue of it falling below the de-minimis limit of £10,000
- Maintenance of playing fields (including sports pitches)
- Buildings on those fields related to their use

#### **Revenue Expenditure**

- Day to day running costs of the school, e.g. costs of staff, training, consumables, teaching resources, utilities etc.
- This includes freestanding furniture and freestanding educational equipment, e.g. laptops, desktops, kindles, iPads etc. Please refer to Appendix 'C' for full details.
- It does not include furniture and ICT purchased to install or refurbish an ICT suite.

Recoverable VAT should be coded to the VAT cost centre: - VAT1 V1000

#### **Invoices from Contractors**

When a VA school (The Governors) are constructing a completely new self-contained building and the building will be used for non-business purposes, then the construction work may be treated as zero rated unless funded by DFC. The contractor will require a certificate from the Governors to evidence that the construction qualifies for zero-rating,

in confirmation that the new building will be used solely for a 'relevant charitable purpose' Please note a new classroom block, sports hall or other building used for community use would not qualify for zero rating.

Refurbishment or a new block that is not self-contained incurs standard rate VAT.

#### <u>Capital Projects and Devolved Formula Capital (DFC)</u>

#### Non-VA Schools

All construction work is standard rate VAT, but VAT can be claimed back in the normal way.

Expenditure through DFC can also be claimed back in the normal way

#### Trust Schools

The formation of a Trust school does not currently bring about any changes to the way in which the school receives both its revenue and capital funding. A Trust school will continue to receive its funding from the Local Authority, but the funding is delegated to the Governing Body, not the Trust.

Currently there is no difference from that of a non-VA school in the way that a Trust school recovers VAT on day to day purchases or capital works.

Expenditure through DFC is standard rated and VAT can be claimed back via the VAT submittal form each month.

The only exception is as follows. Where construction costs include VAT at the standard rate, the VAT can only be claimed back on work funded by the Local Authority and not on construction work funded by external grants secured by the Trust or by any other funds generated by the Trust.

#### Non-UK VAT - Invoices from other EU countries

These transactions are becoming more commonplace due to online purchasing and EU Procurement Regulations.

The nationality of a supplier is not always obvious but it can be verified by checking the company's VAT registration number.

VAT registration numbers have a country identification code prefix. For UK suppliers, the prefix code is **GB**, though often only the numeric reference appears on invoices issued to UK customers. Therefore, invoices prefixed with any other alpha prefix code will be from outside the UK.

Examples are as follows: -

Denmark	DK
France	FR
Germany	DE
Portugal	PT
Spain	ES
The Netherlands	NL

Please notify Ann Riley, in Corporate Finance, promptly if you are placing an order with a supplier outside the UK, as this type of transaction requires special treatment. If not processed correctly, the supplier may charge you VAT which is non-recoverable.

Accounting for VAT on goods or services from another EU country:

- 1) When ordering goods or services from another EU country, the customer, i.e. the Council, is obliged to provide their VAT registration number to the supplier. (Sefton Council's VAT Registration Number is GB 165 6621 52).
- 2) The supplier should then issue you with a zero-rated invoice.
- 3) The additional lines of G/L coding that this type of transaction requires cannot be replicated in FMS currently. Consequently, the VAT accounting will require processing by journal entry. Please provide full details of the transaction to Ann Riley and she will arrange for a journal to be processed.

#### **SECTION 3: VAT ON INCOME (OUTPUT TAX)**

Most income schools receive is Outside the Scope of VAT or Non-Business and is not liable for VAT. However, there are certain sources of income within schools that may be liable for VAT, for example: -

- private telephone calls;
- private photocopying;
- teachers' meals:
- certain sports lettings.

#### Income is credited to the General Ledger (G/L) in Agresso by; -

- 1. Sales orders (Sundry Debtors), processed via Agresso.
- 2. Miscellaneous Cash Income processed via the Cash Income System.

#### See Appendix A for how to account for VAT on Income

#### Sale of Educational Materials to Pupils

Certain items, deemed to be 'incidental to the supply of education', may be sold to pupils without the addition of VAT. Examples of such items include stationery, materials used in craft classes and musical instruments.

It only applies to the sale of equipment that is used on a regular basis in the classroom and for a subject that forms part of the curriculum. Therefore, although these items may be taken home, they must be brought into school on a regular basis.

#### Conditions for Relief

- 1. The sale is made in class by the school to its local authority pupils.
- 2. The goods are sold at or below cost net of VAT a small increase can be added for admin, and overheads.
- 3. The goods are incidental to the provision of education forming part of the normal school curriculum and required for regular classroom use.
- 4. The goods are not clothing or sports equipment.

When the above conditions are **not met** VAT should be charged to pupils at the standard rate.

#### **Sales of Musical Instruments**

These guidelines apply to portable instruments.

 Where the school purchases time from a peripatetic music teacher, charging the pupil for a lesson, musical instruments may be purchased through the school. The school can claim the VAT back and sell it to the parent exempt from VAT. (If the instrument is purchased from SMBC Music Service then the purchase invoice is coded as nonbusiness)

- Where a school is acting as a middle man and the pupil pays the music teacher direct, the school cannot purchase instruments and sell them on exempt of VAT.
- Where a pupil is using the instrument for normal curriculum lessons or to participate in a school band then the school may purchase instruments on behalf of the parent.

#### Sales of Laptop Computers to Teachers and Parents

Sales of computer equipment by local authority schools to either parents or teachers are **not** considered to be closely related to the provision of education and therefore cannot benefit from non-business treatment, even if supplied at or below cost.

Therefore, any income received by the local authority is deemed to be standard rated with VAT applied @ 20%.

#### **Sales of School Uniforms**

VAT must be charged on all sales of school uniform,including PE kits, unless they meet the criteria for zero rating as detailed below.

School uniform sold through the school to pupils can be zero rated for VAT purposes when either; -

- The uniforms are children's sizes. The easiest way to determine the liability is to examine
  the supplier's invoice, which should record the various VAT rates involved.
- All the school's pupils are under the age of 14 and the uniforms bear a prominent logo, crest or badge clearly identifying them as part of the official school uniform, irrespective of the garments size.

#### Sale of Work from Classes

These sales are regarded as 'Outside the Scope of VAT' or non-business if sold to pupils at cost. Therefore, VAT does not have to be charged to the pupils.

In any other circumstance the sale would be taxable at the standard rate.

#### **Locker Charges to Pupils**

Charges made to pupils for the use of lockers on school premises are regarded as 'Outside the Scope of VAT' or non-business. Therefore, VAT does not have to be charged to pupils.

#### Sale of Second-hand Goods or Equipment

The sales of second-hand goods are subject to the same VAT liability as if the goods were supplied new.

For example; -

Second hand Furniture & Equipment Std Rated @ 20%

Second-hand Books

Zero Rated @ 0%

#### Sale of School Photographs

- If the school takes photographs and sells them to parents, then income is standard rated @ 20%.
- If the school employs a photographer to take photographs on behalf of the school and then the school sells them on to parents, the income is standard rated @ 20%. However, the input VAT on the photographer's invoice may be recovered to the normal way.
- Commission received by the School When photographs are sold direct to parents by the photographer, any commission /
  discount received by the school should be paid into the delegated budget and be subject
  to VAT at the standard rate of 20%.

#### After Schools Clubs / Extended Schools Projects

The VAT issues will differ depending on which management method the school chooses to run its after-school clubs and extended school projects.

When they are run in-house by the school, using its own resources, including staff and the income from pupils is **paid into the delegated budget**, the income can be treated as outside the scope/ non-business.

However, if they are not in-house and instead operated by an external provider or voluntary group, please contact Ann Riley to discuss the potential VAT implications for your school.

#### Catering

The treatment of VAT on school catering depends on who is supplying the food and to whom is the food being supplied: -

#### School Meals Sold to Pupils - Outside the Scope - VAT @ 0%

When a school or its agent supplies meals to its pupils, at or below cost, in terms of VAT liability, it is 'outside the scope of VAT' or Non- business. This is because the supply of meals to pupils is considered to be 'incidental to the supply of education'. Therefore, the school does not have to account for VAT on the income from pupils.

#### School Meals Sold to Staff or Visitors - VAT @ 20%

When a school supplies meals to staff or visitors it is a standard rated supply. Therefore, VAT must be accounted for @ 20%.

#### **External Catering Contractors**

When schools employ a catering contractor to supply school meals to the pupils, the VAT treatment will depend on the type of contract entered between the caterer and the school: -

a) Sales by Catering Contractors Direct to Pupils (Contractor acting as principal)

When meals are supplied by catering contractors direct to pupils, VAT must be charged at the standard rate on all sales of food and drink.

b) Sales by Catering Contractors to the School or Local Authority

It is more usual for the school to have an Agency Contract with the catering contractor whereby the catering contractor manages the canteen and provides meals on behalf of the school. Under this arrangement because the contractor is acting as the agent of the school when supplying meals to pupils, the income from the sale of those meals can be treated as non-business or outside the scope.

Therefore: -

- 1. The VAT charged by the caterer to the school on both the management fee and the meals provided is fully recoverable and
- the school is not required to account for VAT on the income from meals sold to pupils.

#### **School Lettings**

#### **General Lettings**

When a school hires out a general-purpose room or hall to a third party the income is Exempt from VAT. (Unless there is an option to tax in place on the property). Please use the account code for **Exempt Lettings** - **R9820**, with your Cost Centre.

#### **Hire of Facilities**

However, if a school hires out a room with specific facilities to a third party, such as an ICT suite or kitchen, because the third party wants to make use of those facilities, it is deemed to be the hire of facilities, rather than a letting and as such is a standard rated supply. Therefore, VAT is **chargeable @ 20%.** 

Please use the account code for **Standard Rated Lettings** - **R9819**, withyour Cost Centre.

#### **Sports Lets**

The hire of sports facilities to individuals or non-for profit making groups representing individuals, is Exempt from VAT. Otherwise the hire will be standard rated with VAT charged @ 20%, unless the hire qualifies for the Block Booking exemption.

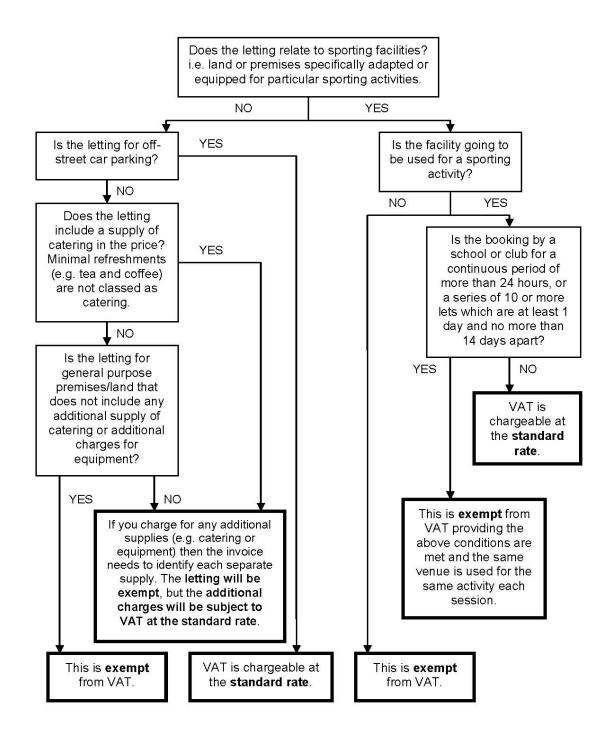
**The Block Booking Exemption** - in certain circumstances HMRC will allow a 'series of lets' booked by a club or an association to be Exempt from VAT.

Please note that the Block Booking exemption cannot be applied to commercial bodies.

All the criteria listed below must be fulfilled to qualify for the Block Booking Exemption: -

- The series should consist of 10 or more sessions.
- It must be for the same sport or activity.
- They should be at the same place each time (not necessarily the same pitch or court).
- There must be an interval of at least 1 day but not more than 14 days between sessions.
- The lets must be to a school, club, association or organisation representing affiliated clubs or constituent associations.
- The hirer has exclusive use of the facilities.
- They must be paid for as a whole and there must be written evidence to that effect.
- Refunds should not be given for sessions cancelled by the hirer as this invalidates the VAT
  exemption. Consequently, when a refund is given the whole series of lets become standard
  rated. However, if sessions are cancelled by the school or Council, for example due to water
  logged pitches, a refund or credit note can be issued without invalidating the VAT exemption.

**Lettings Decision Tree** 



#### Ticket sales for concerts and performances

Income and expenditure should be processed through official delegated budget. Therefore, the school is entitled to recover VAT on the associated expenditure but must account for VAT on the income from ticket sales.

### **Donations – Account Code - R8391**

Donations are monies that are freely given to a school without anything (that is, goods or services), being supplied in return. For example: -

- Donations from the School Fund
- PTA donations,
- Proceeds from fund raising events.
- Grants

In terms of VAT liability, donations are outside the scope of VAT. Consequently, VAT will not be deducted from income credited to this code. Only genuine donations should be credited to the Donations code – R8391.

### Examples of transactions that are not donations: -

- Monies received from another school or college for the secondment of a teacher.
- Refunds from suppliers.
- Teaching School monies.

(The above list is not exhaustive – if you are unsure about any particular transaction or require further clarification please contact Ann Riley in the Corporate Finance Team)

### **Refunds from Suppliers**

When a school receives a refund from a supplier the VAT liability of the refund should follow the VAT liability of the original invoice.

Therefore, if VAT was recovered when your school processed the original invoice, you must account for VAT on the refund. The refund should be credited to an income code with a standard rated VAT Class and VAT will be deducted @ 20%.

Please refer to your school's Electronic paying—in-Slip- for details of the standard rated income codes.

**APPENDIX A** 

### TRANSACTION PROCESSING

### Accounting for VAT on a Supplier's Invoice

When a supplier's invoice is processed for payment, the total VAT inclusive amount must be paid to the supplier but only the net amount should be debited to your School's budget. The VAT element is debited to the Input Tax code **VAT1 V1000**, andreclaimed from HMRC.

For example: -

Your school receives an invoice in the sum of £120.00 from a stationery supplier.

 Ensure the VAT invoice meets all HMRC's criteria for a valid VAT invoice, as detailed on Page 6 (legislation only permits VAT recovery when payments are supported by a valid VAT invoice).

It is important that the invoice is addressed to your school or to Sefton Council. It should not be addressed to the governors of the school.

- 2. Check forArithmetic Errors If the invoice is arithmetically inaccurate **do not** amend the amount of VAT shown on the invoice. Contact the supplier to have the invoice cancelled by a credit note and a replacement issued.
- 3. The invoice should be coded as follows -

Description	£	Code
Stationery	100.00	EPXXR2221
VAT	20.00	VAT1 V1000
Total Payment	120.00	

4. If you have any queries about an invoice or are uncertain as to whether VAT is included or whether it is recoverable, please contact Ann Riley in Corporate Finance.

Accounting for VAT: Sales Invoice (Sundry Debtor)

 Complete a Request to Raise a Sales Invoice Form (Excel Format), which can be found on the Schools Intranet. For those without access to the Schools Intranet please contact Sharon Samyeli in Sefton's Income Section, to obtain a copy. Please e-mail: - Sharon.Samyeli@sefton.gov.uk

2. The price should be entered net of VAT.

NB to calculate the Net amount from a Gross Fee; -

- Divide by 120, then multiply by 100, (or divide by 6 then multiply by 5).
- 3. The VAT Classification should be selected from the drop down menu, as per the table below: -

VAT Classification		Rate
0	Non-Business or Outside the Scope	0%
S1	Exempt	0%
S2	Zero Rated	0%
<b>S</b> 3	Standard Rated	20%

When 'S3 - Standard Rated' is selected the VAT, due will be automatically calculated and entered in the 'VAT £' column.

4. The completed form should be e-mailed to the Accounts Receivable Team:Income.section@finance.sefton.gov.uk

### Accounting for VAT: Miscellaneous Cash Income

- 1. This refers to cash/cheque transactions that are banked and credited directly to the General Ledger codes in Agresso.
- 2. VAT is accounted for via the VAT Class system, there is no need to identify VAT as a separate transaction on the Paying-in Slip.

VAT Class		Rate
0	Non-Business or Outside the Scope	0%
1	Exempt	0%
2	Zero Rated	0%
3	Standard Rated	20%

- 3. Each income code should be linked to the appropriate VAT Class. This is system is maintained by Ann Riley in Corporate Finance.
- 4. For Standard Rated transactions, that is VAT Class 3; VAT is automatically deducted @ 20% and credited to **VAT1 V2000**. The net amount is then credited to the relevant school income code.
- 5. It is essential that income streams with different VAT liabilities are not credited to the same G/L code.
- 6. Income credited to a G/L code without a VAT Class, will automatically default to VAT Class 9, pending verification of the VAT liability by Ann Riley.

**APPENDIX B** 

### PETTY CASH & VAT RECOVERY

### 1. INTRODUCTION

VAT can only be reclaimed on Petty Cash transactions when there is a **Valid VAT Invoice or Receipt** to support each transaction (See Page 5).

The invoice must be addressed to either the Council or the employee.

The following cannot be used as evidence for reclaiming VAT: -

- Invoices which are marked 'pro-forma' or 'THIS IS NOT A TAX INVOICE'
- Copies of Charge Card statements.

HM Revenue & Customs legislation requires that the Council retains all VAT invoices and receipts for a minimum of 6 financial years plus the current year.

### Please note the following: -

- **Purchases under £250.00** a normal store receipt can be used to support VAT recovery so long as it meets all the criteria of a less detailed VAT invoice. (See Page 5).
- Purchases over £250 a full VAT invoice is required. (See Page 5).
- Only UK VAT can be recovered. If items are purchased from other European Countries and VAT is charged, it is non-recoverable.
   Particular care needs to be taken when items are purchased over the Internet because it is not always obvious from the website that you are dealing with a Non-UK based company. However, this can be verified by checking the company's VAT registration number. All UK VAT registration numbers are prefixed with GB.
- Purchases from Amazon Marketplace must be supported by a VAT invoice from each individual trader. As per the above please be aware of non-UK suppliers as the VAT on their invoices is non-recoverable.
- To calculate a VAT inclusive amount; -

VAT @ 20% - divide the total cost by 120 and then multiply by 20 (or divide by 6).

Page 149

.

### 2. VAT LIABILITY OF COMMON PURCHASES MADE BY PETTY CASH

FOOD	ZERO RATED	0%
CONFECTIONERY	STD RATED	20%
SOFT DRINKS	STD RATED	20%
PUBLIC TRANSPORT	ZERO RATED	0%
TUNNEL TOLLS (Mersey Tunnel)	NON-BUSINESS	0%
CAR PARKING - OFF STREET	STD RATED	20%
CAR PARKING - ON STREET	NON-BUSINESS	0%
POSTAGE STAMPS	EXEMPT	0%
BOOKS	ZERO RATED	0%
CD'S	STD RATED	20%
STATIONERY	STD RATED	20%
PAINT & MATERIALS	STD RATED	20%
CLEANING MATERIALS	STD RATED	20%
TOILETRIES	STD RATED	20%

If you have any queries please contact Ann Riley in Corporate Finance

Tel: - 0151 931 4108 / E-mail: - ann.Riley@sefton.gov.uk

### **APPENDIX C**

### CHARGE CARD TRANSACTIONS & VAT RECOVERY

When Charge Card Statements are processed for payment, VAT cannot be reclaimed from H.M. Revenue & Customs unless a valid **VAT invoice**, for each individual purchase, supports the statement. **The Charge Card statement alone does not provide sufficient evidence for VAT recovery.** 

### Please Note the following: -

- Order Confirmations/ Acknowledgements these documents do not constitute a valid VAT invoice.
- Purchases under £250.00 a normal store receipt can be used to support VAT recovery so long as it meets all the criteria of a less detailed VAT invoice (See Page 5).
- Purchases over £250 a full VAT invoice is required (See Page 5).
- Food, Books, Public Transport & Children's Clothing are Zero Rated and do not include VAT.

NB. Public Transport includes airfares.

• Only UK VAT can be recovered. If items are purchased from other European Countries and VAT is charged, it is non-recoverable.

Particular care needs to be taken when items are purchased over the Internet because it is not always obvious from the website that you are dealing with a Non-UK based company. However, this can be verified by checking the company's VAT registration number. All UK VAT registration numbers are prefixed with **GB**.

- **Purchases from Amazon Marketplace** must be supported by a VAT invoice from each individual trader. As per the above please be aware of non-UK suppliers as the VAT on their invoices is **non-recoverable**
- To calculate a VAT inclusive amount; -

VAT @ 20% - Divide the total cost by 120 and then multiply by 20. (Or divide total by 6)

**APPENDIX D** 

### HMRC GUIDANCE FOR LOCAL AUTHORITIES & VOLUNTARY AIDED SCHOOLS

### Introduction

However, because Governing Bodies of Voluntary Aided (VA) Schools are separate legal entities in their own right, Local authorities cannot recover VAT on any expenditure that is the responsibility of the Governing Body (GB)such as Devolved Formula Capital (DFC) funding Lottery Grants and Sports England funding.

The HMRC's new guidance for Local Authorities (LA) and Voluntary Aided (VA) Schools, redefines their responsibilities as detailed below: -

### Governing Body (GB) Responsibility - Non Recoverable VAT

Expenditure which is capital in nature, and relates to:

- The existing buildings (internal and external)
- Perimeter walls and fences, even if around the playing fields
- Playgrounds
- Fixed furniture, fixtures and fittings including ICT infrastructure

**Except** where it is excluded from the definition of capital expenditure due to it falling below the de minimis limit which is currently £10,000 for Sefton Schools, as defined in the Fair Funding: Scheme for Financing Schools, Section 12, Para 12.2.

Non-Recoverable VAT should be coded to your school's cost centre e.g. EPXXR1011

### Local Authorities (LA) Responsibility - Recoverable VAT

Expenditure which is capital in nature, and relates to:

- Expenditure excluded from GB responsibility (above) by virtue of it falling below the de minimis limit of £10,000
- Maintenance of playing fields (including sports pitches)
- Buildings on those fields related to their use

### **Revenue Expenditure**

- Day to day running costs of the school e.g. costs of staff, training, consumables, teaching resources, utilities etc.
- This includes freestanding furniture and freestanding educational equipment e.g. laptops, desktops, kindles, iPads etc. Please refer to the table below.

Recoverable VAT should be coded to the VAT cost centre: - VAT1 V1000

### **ICT SUMMARY**

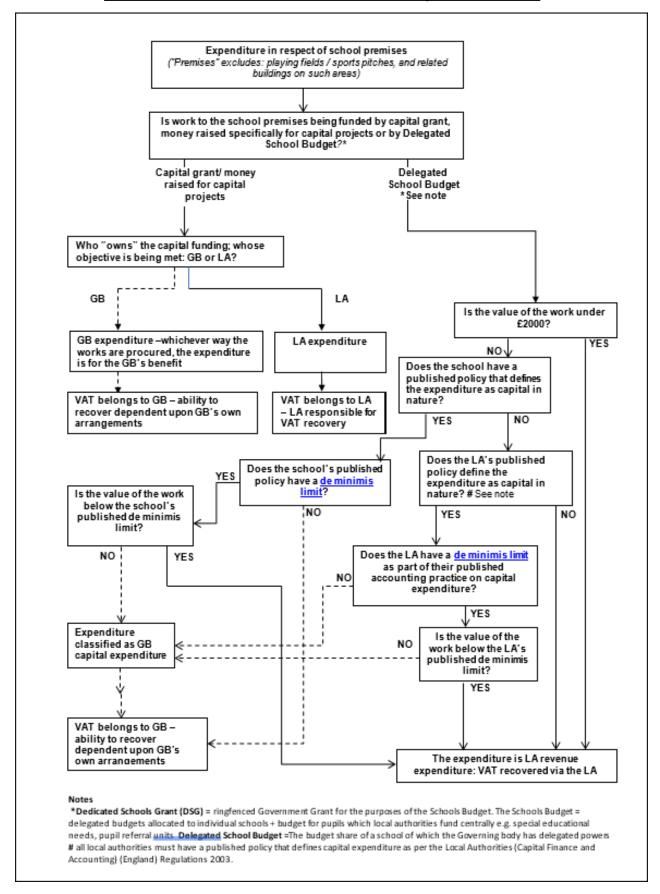
Note: VA Schools are allowed to use capital grant funding to pay for ICT equipment, but VAT will not then be recoverable.

Premises (GB Responsibility)	Non-Premises (LA Responsibility)
NON-RECOVERABLE VAT	VAT FULLY RECOVERABLE
Building of ICT Suite - including construction works and all equipment, furniture & fittings installed.	PCs, servers, interactive electronic whiteboards, projectors, printers and fax machines installed individually (not as part ICT suite)
<ul><li>These become part of the premises.</li><li>Installation of:</li></ul>	Laptops, kindles, iPads and other 'hand held' equipment used in the classroom *
<ul><li>ICT cabling;</li><li>WiFi systems, incl. ethernet &amp; routers;</li></ul>	Laptop trolleys (storage / connection facilities)
Security systems, incl. proximity cards	Electronic tills and biometric identification scanning devices
These are purpose built for premises, and not removable for use elsewhere.	All of the above are not part of premises as removable and available for use elsewhere.
	* VAT recoverability on such items used by teachers is as non-VA schools

### Please Note: -

- Where for example, the GB, School Fund or PTA, of a VA School makes a donation into the delegated budget, to finance expenditure that is the responsibility of the GB –VAT cannot be recovered.
- 2. Grants such as Devolved Formula Capital (DFC) or a Lottery Grant are owned by the GB. Therefore, if these funds are paid into the delegated budget and used to finance any expenditure whether GB or LA responsibility VAT cannot be recovered.
- 3. Where the delegated budget is used to fund the remaining 10% of a DFC 90% gross funded project **VAT cannot be recovered.**
- 4. HMRC warns schools that the de minimis limit should not be used to artificially disaggregate capital expenditure to recover VAT. For example, a single supply of ICT infrastructure should not be split into smaller contracts for individual ICT works. Similarly, construction works should not be split so that if invoiced separately, this could be treated as revenue expenditure as individually below the de minimis limit.

### HMRC's Flow chart to determine VAT Recovery at a VA School



**APPENDIX E** 

### **VAT CATEGORIES**

### **Standard Rated**

VAT is chargeable on ALL supplies of goods or services by the Council, at the standard rate of 20%, unless they clearly fall within one of the other VAT categories.

### **Examples of Standard Rated Transactions:-**

- Postage and Packing service
- Recharge of teaching or admin staff to other educational establishments for admin purposes
- External training from a company or individual if VAT registered
- Supplies to staff and visitors
- Most other goods and services (not essential to the delivery of education)
- Supply of goods to pupils not essential to education
- Advertising.
- Sponsorship receipts for events.
- Sales of confectionery.

### Non-Business / Outside the Scope

This generally applies to goods and services supplied by the Council in its capacity as a public body, for supplies made under a statutory duty and which are not in competition with the private sector.

### **Examples of Non-Business / Outside the Scope Transactions:**

- Primary and secondary education in schools.
- On street car parking.
- Trade waste collection fees.
- Grant funding.
- PTA Donations
- All transactions between Sefton Council and Sefton LEA schools. (Excluding transactions between Sefton Council and the Governors of VA schools).
- Sales of goods to pupils, at cost or below, that are essential to education.
   (Excludes clothing, including PE kits).

### **Exempt**

VAT is not chargeable on exempt supplies but organisations who make exempt supplies **cannot** usually reclaim the Input VAT on expenditure associate dwith those supplies.

Local Authorities have a special concession, under Section 33 of the VAT Act, which enables them to recover Input VAT related to their exempt activities, up to certain limits.

### **Examples of Exempt Transactions:-**

- Land & Property (including room hire), without an "option to tax" (which would make the transaction standard rated).
- Insurance and financial charges.
- Fee paying education such as adult education.
- · Research and vocational training.
- Private tuition by independent teacher.
- Health & Welfare the supply of health and welfare service is exempt when provided by qualified medical practitioners (including registered nurses).
   Provision of residential care is also exempt.
   (NB: Statutory Welfare is Non-Business/Outside the Scope).
- Letting of Sports Facilities under the Block Booking Exemption, (please refer to Page 17).

### Zero Rated

These supplies are taxable under VAT regulations but at a rate of 0%. Organisations that make zero rated supplies **can** reclaim the Input VAT on expenditure associated with those supplies.

### **Examples of Zero Rated Transactions:-**

- Basic food & drink (not confectionery or soft drinks).
- Young children's clothing and footwear (designed for under 14's).
- Books & Publications –newspapers, magazines, maps (not stationery, plans, posters, calendars).
- Passenger/Public Transport any vehicle designed to carry 10 or more passengers including the driver (not taxis or the hire of vehicles without a driver).
- Construction of new residential or charitable buildings.

### Reduced Rated

The reduced or lower rate of VAT is currently applied at 5%.

### **Examples of Reduced Rated Transactions:-**

- Fuel and power for 'domestic' use applies to 'residential' and also 'low consumption' or 'charitable' premises;. Voluntary Aided (VA) and Voluntary Controlled (VC) schools qualify as charities for this purpose. Reduced rate fuel supplies are also exempt from climate change levy (CCL).
- Children's car seats.
- Women's sanitary products.
- Contraceptive products.
- Installation of energy saving material.
- · Certain residential conversions and renovations.

### **APPENDIX F**

### **INCOME CODES – VAT LIABILITY**

Income	Income Code	Description	VAT Class	VAT Rate	Notes
Before & After School Club	R9963	Other Income - Outside the Scope	OS	0%	
Child Care Voucher for?	R9963	Other Income - Outside the Scope	OS	0%	
Nursery Fees	R9723	Fees Nursery	OS	0%	
School bus charges	R9363	Sales Zero Rated	Zero	0%	
School bus charges wimming Caps	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
→ ale of School Uniform - Child Sizes	R9363	Sales Zero Rated	Zero	0%	
Gale of School Uniform - Adult Sizes	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Sale of Staff Uniform	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Sale of Book Bags to Pupils	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Educational visits	R8365	Parental contributions to Educational Visits	OS	0%	
School meals - Child	R9302	Meals Sold to Pupils	OS	0%	
School meals - Adult	R9303	Meals Sold to Adults	STD	20%	

Sale of materials / equipment non-vatable?	R8344	Contribution - Educational Material	OS	0%	
Sale of materials / equipment vatable?	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Income from Consultancy					
- Sefton LEA Schools	R9963	Other Income - Outside the Scope	OS	0%	
- Other Authorities	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Non Sefton LEA Schools	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
eacher training income - Student eacher Placements	R9961	Other Income Non-VATable (Including Exam Fees)	OS	0%	
chools Direct Training (Tuition Fee)	R9992	Course Fee	Exempt	0%	
Schools Direct Training (Salaried)	R8244	Other Government Grants Non-Capital	OS	0%	
Apprentice income	R8337	Other Grants Non-Government (Incl Lottery grant)	OS	0%	
Income from DFC for VA schools	R8391	Donations Other Sources	OS	0%	See Note 1
Lettings - Facilities various including pool hire, kitchen, sports, special school outdoor play area	R9819	Lettings - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Lettings - Room Hire	R9820	Lettings - Exempt	Exempt	0%	

Lettings of off-site premises i.e. caravan owned by school let to parents of special needs children	R9819	Lettings - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Income from grants (non-government)	R8337	Other Grants - Non-Government	OS	0%	
Income for courses	R9992	Course Fee	Exempt	0%	
Income from PTA / School fund	R8391	Donations Other Sources	OS	0%	
Big Lottery funding for non-VA schools	R8337	Other Grants Non-Government (Incl Lottery grant)	OS	0%	
Tocome from solar panels etc -	R9961	Other Income Non-VATable	OS	0%	
rcome from solar panels etc - Export	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Consultancy Work at Other Schools (Non-Sefton LEA Schools)	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
School improvement income (VA schools) - Refunds from Archdiocese	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
Income from other schools as part of a partnership / cluster - Sefton LEA Schools	R9963	Other Income - Outside the Scope	os	0%	

				T
R9992	Course Fee	Exempt	0%	
R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
R9820	Lettings - Exempt	Exempt	0%	
R9363	Sales Zero Rated	Zero	0%	
R9961	Other Income Non- VATable (Including Exam Fees)	OS	0%	
R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
R9961	Other Income Non- VATable	OS	0%	
R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	
	R9962 R9820 R9363 R9961 R9962 R9961 R9962	R9962 Other Income - Std Rated  R9820 Lettings - Exempt  R9363 Sales Zero Rated  R9961 Other Income Non- VATable (Including Exam Fees )  R9962 Other Income - Std Rated  R9961 Other Income Non- VATable  R9962 Other Income - Std Rated	R9962 Other Income - Std Rated STD  R9820 Lettings - Exempt Exempt R9363 Sales Zero Rated Zero R9961 Other Income Non- VATable (Including Exam Fees ) OS  R9962 Other Income - Std Rated STD  R9961 Other Income Non- VATable OS  R9962 Other Income Non- VATable STD	R9962         Other Income - Std Rated         STD         20%           R9820         Lettings - Exempt         Exempt         0%           R9363         Sales Zero Rated         Zero         0%           R9961         Other Income Non- VATable (Including Exam Fees )         OS         0%           R9962         Other Income - Std Rated         STD         20%           R9962         Other Income Non- VATable         OS         0%           R9962         Other Income - Std Rated         STD         20%

- Minor Acknowledgement	R8391	Donations Other Sources	OS	0%	See Note 2
- Significant Acknowledgement / Advertising	R9962	Other Income - Std Rated	STD	20%	See Note 3

### Note 1

Please contact your Finance Officer to transfer the DFC to the appropriate expenditure Code.

Note 2

or Example- Naming the Sponsor in a list of supporters. Giving a flag or a Sticker

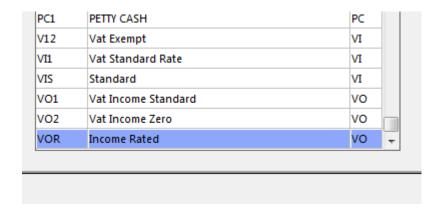
## $\frac{1}{3} \frac{1}{10 \text{te } 3}$

- displaying the sponsor's company logo or trading name;
- participating in the sponsors promotional /leaflet distribution / advertising activities;
- allowing the sponsor to use your name or logo;
- giving free or reduced-price tickets;
- providing entertainment or hospitality facilities;

### **APPENDIX G**

### **ADDING VAT CODES IN FMS**

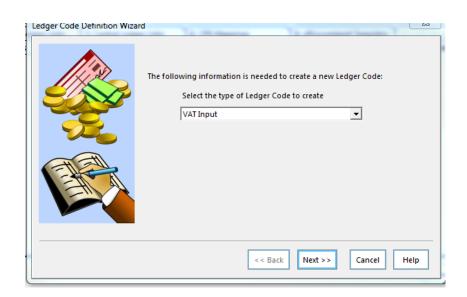
1. To add VAT codes take route Tools / General Ledger Setup –tab 5 Ledger Codes. Browse to the end of the list to find existing VAT codes



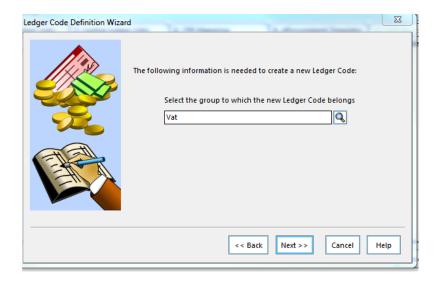
2. To add a code select green plus button to the left of the panel. IT IS CRITICAL THAT THE CORRECT TYPE IS SELECTED.

All Invoice type VAT is VAT Input (all Income is VAT Output).

Ensure type is correct.

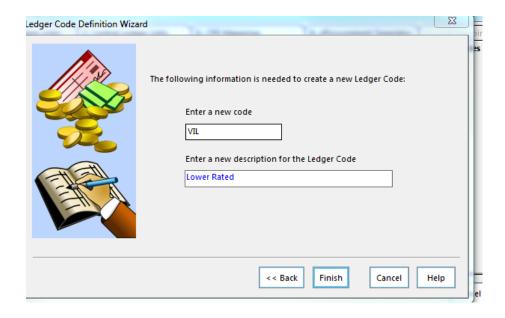


### 3. Select Next

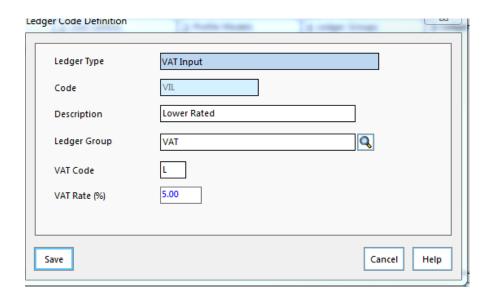


- 4. The group to select is VAT Select Next
- Enter the New code the code will be three letters long with the first two being Capital V Capital I for VAT input type and Capital V Capital O for Vat output.
   In the screen below VI (Capital L for Lower Rated is being added)

Add appropriate description -Select Finish



6. At the next screen add the letter in this case it is capital L and enter the VAT Rate as 5.00 – Save

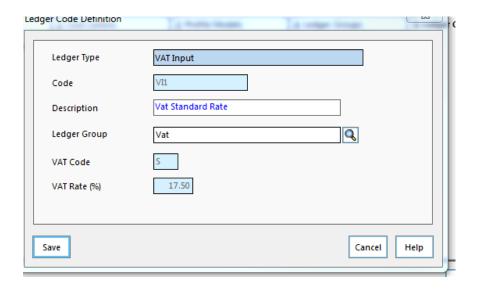


7. Follow this procedure to ensure each of the codes below exist in Agresso.

Code	Description	Letter Code in FMS	%
	VAT INPUT		
VI2	Vat Exempt	X	0.00
VIS	Standard Rate	V	20.00
VIL	Lower Rated	L	5.00
VIZ	Zero Rated	W	0.00
	VAT OUTPUT		
VOP	Income Outside the Scope	Р	0.00
VO2	Vat Income Zero Rated	Z	0.00

VOR	Income Rated	R	20.00
VOE	Income Exempt	Е	0.00
VOL	Income Lower Rated	D	5.00

8. If a VAT code has been used in any year it can't be deleted. It may be worthwhile to edit the description for any old VAT codes that are no longer valid. e.g. VI1 VAT Standard Rate Letter S with the old 17.5% rate.



A suggested change to this description could be VAT – Old 17.5% Rate Do Not Use.

**ANNEX J** 

### Insurance Schemes

Schools can purchase the following five categories of cover from Sefton Corporate Resources through the Insurance Team, Service Level Agreement: Material Damage, Employer's Liability, Public Liability, School Journeys and All Risks Insurance. Other categories of cover (e.g Motor Vehicle Insurance) can be arranged subject to an additional charge. (Note Academies have their own insurance cover arrangements and are not part of the Local Authority's scheme. Similarly, VA schools are covered under their relative Diocesan schemes)

COVER AGAINST	COVER FOR	EXCESS
Perils include: - Fire, Lightning, Explosion, Aircraft, Riot, Civil Commotion, Storm and flood (weather related) and terrorism.	Physical loss or damage to buildings and contents owned by the school. Temporary accommodation and additional expenditure due to business interruption.	£250,000 Each and every loss
Sudden & Unforeseen Damage (full breakdown, accidental damage and explosion and collapse of plant)	Periodic statutory inspections and issue of reports on lifts, lifting equipment/platforms, fume cupboards and air pressure plant.	£100 Each and every claim
Legal liability for death, bodily injury, illness or disease.	Employees and volunteers in the course of their employment.	£350,000 any one claim
Legal liability for death, bodily injury, illness or disease and damage to material property.	Third parties	£350,000 any one claim
Actual or alleged negligent act, error or omission.	Staff or governor while carrying out their statutory duties.	£350,000 any one claim
Loss of money as a direct result of fraud or dishonesty. Includes approved school funds.	By an employee or in respect of computer fraud and funds transfer fraud only, any governor.	£10,000 any one claim
Loss of non-negotiable monies and damage as a direct result of theft or attempted theft of money to any safe, strong-room etc	Cheques, bank notes, coins etc.	£1,000 any one claim
Includes: medical expenses, cancellation due to illness/injury, loss or damage to personal property.	Pupils, teachers and volunteers while on authorised journeys. Hazardous pursuits must be notified to Insurance Section.	None
Accidental bodily injury resulting in death or disablement.	All staff, governors and students on work experience.	None
	Perils include: - Fire, Lightning, Explosion, Aircraft, Riot, Civil Commotion, Storm and flood (weather related) and terrorism.  Sudden & Unforeseen Damage (full breakdown, accidental damage and explosion and collapse of plant)  Legal liability for death, bodily injury, illness or disease.  Legal liability for death, bodily injury, illness or disease and damage to material property. Actual or alleged negligent act, error or omission.  Loss of money as a direct result of fraud or dishonesty. Includes approved school funds.  Loss of non-negotiable monies and damage as a direct result of theft or attempted theft of money to any safe, strong-room etc  Includes: medical expenses, cancellation due to illness/injury, loss or damage to personal property. Accidental bodily injury resulting in death or	Perils include: - Fire, Lightning, Explosion, Aircraft, Riot, Civil Commotion, Storm and flood (weather related) and terrorism.  Sudden & Unforeseen Damage (full breakdown, accidental damage and explosion and collapse of plant)  Legal liability for death, bodily injury, illness or disease.  Legal liability for death, bodily injury, illness or disease and damage to material property.  Actual or alleged negligent act, error or omission.  Loss of money as a direct result of fraud or dishonesty. Includes approved school funds.  Loss of non-negotiable monies and damage as a direct result of theft or attempted theft of money to any safe, strong-room etc  Physical loss or damage to buildings and contents owned by the school.  Temporary accommodation and additional expenditure due to business interruption.  Periodic statutory inspections and issue of reports on lifts, lifting equipment/platforms, fume cupboards and air pressure plant.  Employees and volunteers in the course of their employment.  Staff or governor while carrying out their statutory duties.  By an employee or in respect of computer fraud and funds transfer fraud only, any governor.  Cheques, bank notes, coins etc.  Cheques, bank notes oins etc.  Pupils, teachers and volunteers while on authorised journeys. Hazardous pursuits must be notified to Insurance Section.  All staff, governors and students on work experience.

5. ALL RISKS	Perils include: - Theft, and Accidental Damage	School items of equipment with an individual value of £250 or more.	None

NOTE: Excess values are met from the Council's Insurance Fund. The value of excesses may change in future years and you are advised to contact the Insurance Team for further details.

### Other Categories of Cover

### **Sickness Cover**

Cover for absence from school due to personal accident or illness of Teaching Staffis not covered under the Council's Insurance scheme. This is dealt with under separate Supply Cover arrangements, whereby Schools subscribe into a centrally held Supply Fund to enable short term agency supply cover to be arranged as necessary through HR support. Further details of policy can be found from HR support team or School Finance Officer.

### Laptops Insurance – (This is covered under Item 5 All Risks above)

Laptops to be used for staff insured under this scheme are covered for loss or damage in the following locations:

- In school
- In transit between school and the home of the assigned teacher
- In the home of the assigned teacher

### Annex K

### **GUIDE TO GOVERNORS EXPENSES**

### **ALLOWANCES FOR GOVERNOR EXPENSES**

Governing bodies that have a delegated budget can choose whether or not to pay allowances to governors and associate members of the governing body. The DfE considers it good practice for governing bodies to pay allowances, as governors should not be out of pocket for the valuable work they do. Examples of Governor expenses:

- care arrangements for a dependent relative (including childcare or baby sitting);
- telephone charges, photocopying and stationery;
- travel and subsistence (i.e. reimbursement for meals purchased that would not have otherwise been bought).

The list in paragraph above is not an exhaustive list of possible allowances, under provisions schedule 11 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998. Payments can only be paid in respect of expenditure necessarily incurred for the purposes of enabling the person to perform any duty as a governor. This would not include payments to cover loss of earnings for attending meetings.

Travel expenses must be paid at a rate not exceeding the maximum level of HM Revenue & Customs authorised mileage rate. The rates are changed annually and can be found on HM Revenue & Customs website at www.hmrc.gov.uk

Governing bodies may pay less than the authorised mileage rate if they wish, but they may not pay more than the maximum level of those rates. If a governing body has any doubt about whether or not payments made under its scheme attract a tax liability, it should contact HM Revenue & Customs for advice. Other expenses should be paid on the provision of a receipt (at a rate predetermined by the governing body and set out in its scheme) and should be limited to the amount shown on the receipt.

Governing bodies should make provision from within their delegated budget if they anticipate expenditure in making adjustments for disabled governors or in providing support to those governors whose first language is not English.

Where a governing body does not have a delegated budget, the allowances referred to above may be paid by the Local Authority at a rate determined by them.

**ANNEX L** 

## Confidential Reporting Policy "Whistleblowing" Introduction

This document should be read in conjunction with the corporate Confidential Reporting Policy. The rights & responsibilities outlined within the corporate procedure are inherent within this procedure; this document outlines particular responsibilities for school based employees.

### **Statement**

This Governing Body is committed to the highest possible standards of openness, probity and accountability. Any school governors who have serious concerns about the school are expected to come forward and voice those concerns. They will be able to do so in confidence and without fear of reprisal

### Legislation

UK Public Disclosure Act 1998 came into force on 2nd July 1999. The Act promotes the public interest

### Scope

This policy is additional to the existing mechanisms that exist for raising particular issues e.g. the grievance procedure exists for issues around employment, parental complaints are managed through the Governor complaint procedure & Schools Management Team, child protection issues should be directed in the first instance to the Principal Education Welfare Officer

This procedure covers major concerns as illustrated below:

- Conduct which is an offence or breach of the law
- Disclosures relating to miscarriage of justice
- Health & safety risks, including risks to the public as well as other employees
- Damage to the environment
- Unauthorised use of public funds
- Unethical conduct

Thus any serious concerns you have about the operation of the school or conduct of school staff or members of the Governing Body can be reported under this policy

### How to raise a concern

As a first step you should normally raise concerns with your immediate manager or Head Teacher. However depending on the seriousness and sensitivity of the issue it may be appropriate to raise the issue with the Chair of Governors. In extreme cases you should approach the Corporate Director for Services to People (or an appropriate representative).

Concerns are best raised in writing. All staff is encouraged to use the following format:

- The background and history of the concern
- The reason why you are particularly concerned about the situation

If you are not able to put your concern in writing you should meet with the appropriate person as detailed above

You are encouraged to put your name to your allegation. Concerns expressed anonymously are much less powerful but will be considered at the discretion of the governing body in line with the corporate guidelines.

You may wish to consider discussing your concern with a colleague or trade union representative, you may wish to bring a representative along to any meetings you may have.

The School recognises that reporting a concern can be difficult. If what you are saying is true you should nothing to fear. If you raise a concern in good faith you will have nothing to fear.

All concerns raised will be treated in confidence and every effort made not to reveal your identity if you so wish. However you need to be aware that you may need to come forward as a witness.

### How the school will respond

The School will respond to your concerns. Do not forget that testing out your concerns is not the same as either accepting or rejecting them.

Where appropriate the matter raised may:

- Be investigated within school
- Be referred to the appropriate Service within the Council for further investigation
- Be referred to the external auditor
- Be referred to the police
- Form the subject of an independent enquiry

If the matter is dealt within the school the appropriate member of the school management team or Governing Body will respond to the concern. If the matter is referred to the Council the corporate process will be followed.

If you are not satisfied with any action taken or you feel it is right to take the matter outside the Council, the following are possible contact points:

- your local councillor
- the external auditor
- your solicitor
- your trade union
- your local Citizens Advice Bureau
- relevant professional bodies or regulatory organisations
- a relevant voluntary organisation (e.g. Public Concern at Work 0171 404 6609)
- the police
- the Audit Commission via a special telephone hotline 0171 630 1019

If you do take the matter outside the Council, you should ensure that you do not disclose confidential information. Check with the contact point about that.

**ANNEX M** 

### CIPFA CODE OF PRACTICE - CAPITAL EXPENDITURE ITEMS

LA CAPITAL /REVENUE SPLIT AND ITEMS WHICH ARE THE SEPARATE RESPONSIBILITY OF GOVERNORS IN VA SCHOOLS

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES IN LINE WITH DE INTERPRETATION OF THE CIPFA CODE OF PRACTICE

## NB ACTUAL INTERPRETATION OF CIPFA CODE OF PRACTICE FOR THESE PURPOSES WILL BE FOR EACH LOCAL AUTHORITY

ELEMENT	CAPITAL: AS CIPFA CODE OF PRACTICE	REVENUE: REPAIRS & MAINTENANCE
Flat	Structure. New (not replacement) structure	Repair/replacement of small parts of an existing structure
	Structure. Replacement of all or substantial part of an existing structure to prevent imminent or correct actual major failure of the structure	Replace small areas of rotten or defective timber, make good minor areas of spalling concrete where reinforcing bars exposed
	Screed / insulation in a new building/extension Screed / insulation. Replacement/repair of substantially all. Improve	Repair/replacement of screed/ insulation where defective.  Work to improve insulation standards, during work to repair/ replace small areas of roof.
	effectiveness of insulation  Finish on new build.  Replacement of all/substantially all on existing roof	Replacement of roof finish on existing building. Re-coating chippings to improve life expectancy
	Edge Trim/ Fascia on new build	Repairs/ replacement. (UPVC) Repainting.
	Edge Trim/ Fascia, Replacement of all/substantially all on existing roof	Repairs/ replacement. (UPVC) Repainting.
	Drainage on new build	Clearing out gutters and downpipes. Replacement/repair/ repainting of/ individual gutters/pipes
	Other e.g. Flashings, Roof lights on new build Replacement of all/substantially all on existing roof	Repair/ Replacement/ cleaning of individual items
ELEMENT	CAPITAL: AS CIPFA CODE OF PRACTICE	REVENUE: REPAIRS & MAINTENANCE
Pitched	Structure. New (not replacement) structure	Repair/replacement of small parts of an existing structure
	Structure. Replacement of all or substantial part of an existing structure to prevent imminent or correct actual major failure of the structure	Replace/ repair small areas of rotten/ defective joists, rafters, purlins etc. Not complete trusses
	Insulation in a new	Repair/replacement/ increasing

	building/extension	thickness of insulation in an
		existing roof
	Insulation. Replacement /repair of substantially all. Improve insulation to current standards	
	Roof finish in a new building/extension, replacement of all/substantially all on existing roof	Replace missing/ damaged small parts
	Bargeboards/ Fascias in a new building/extension, replacement of all/substantially all on existing roof	Repairs/ replacement/ Repainting
	Drainage in a new building/extension	Clearing out gutters and downpipes. Replacement/repairs of individual pipes/gutters
	Drainage. Replacement of all/substantially all on existing roof	
	Other e.g. Flashings, Roof windows in a new building/extension, replacement of all/substantially all on existing roof	Repair/ Replacement /cleaning
Other	Provide new covered link etc. between existing buildings	Minor repairs, maintenance to existing covered link
	Rebuild or substantially repair structure of existing covered link	
	Add porch etc. to existing building	Minor repairs, maintenance to existing structure
	Rebuild or substantially repair structure of existing porch	
ELEMENT	CAPITAL: AS CIPFA CODE OF PRACTICE	REVENUE: REPAIRS & MAINTENANCE
Floors Ground Floor	Ctrusture and doe in new healthing	Danair/ranksament of amell
Ground Floor	Structure and dpc in new building	Repair/replacement of small parts of an existing structure
	Structure and dpc - Replacement of all or substantial part of an existing structure to prevent imminent or correct actual major failure of the structure	
	Screed and finish in new build, replacement of all/substantially all on existing floor - e.g. replacement of most carpets/ tiles in a room	Replacement and repair of screed and finishes/ Replacement of mats / matwells. Maintenance e.g. re-varnishing wooden floors.
Upper Floor	Structure - as ground floor Screed and Finish - as ground floor	As ground floor  Repairs of finishes/ Replacement - as ground floor
Ceilings		3.5 3.5 3.5 3.5
Top/ only storey	Suspension	Repair/ replacement incl. From water damage, &

		nooccary desertion
	Mambrana	necessary decoration
	Membrane Fixed	Danair/ ranjacoment
	1 ixeu	Repair/ replacement inc. from water damage
	Access panels	Repair/ replacement
Lower storeys	Suspension	Repair/ replacement
Lower Gloreyo	Membrane	1 topan replacement
	Fixed	Repair/ replacement
	1.735	
ELEMENT	CAPITAL: AS CIPFA CODE OF PRACTICE	REVENUE: REPAIRS & MAINTENANCE
All	Specialist removal/ replacement of damaged/ disturbed Asbestos based materials, planned or emergency	Inspection/ air testing Applying sealant coats to asbestos surfaces for protection
E to collection		
External walls	Structure	Donaira
Masonry/ cladding	Underpinning/ propping for new build	Repairs Preventive measures e.g. tree removal
	External Finish on new build	Repair/replacement of small parts of an existing structure. e.g. re-pointing/ re-cladding a proportion of a wall where failure has occurred.
	External Finish on existing builds where needed to prevent imminent or correct actual major failure of the structure. e.g. repointing/re-cladding work affecting most of a building /replacement build	
Windows and Doors	Framing - new build	Repair/ replacement of individual frames. Repainting frames
	Framing - structural replacement programme	Repair/ replacement of individual windows. Repainting frames
	Glazing - new build	Replacing broken glass
	Glazing Upgrading existing glazing	
	Ironmongery Improved security	Repair/ replacement, upgrading locks etc.
	Jointing including mastic joints	
	Internal and external decorations to new build	Internal and external decoration to include cleaning down and preparation.
Masonry chimneys	Structure	
	Jointing including expansion and mortar joints/ pointing/ DPC	Repair/ re-pointing
Intornal walle	1	
Internal walls Solid	Complete including various internal finishes, linings and decorations	Repairs and redecoration to internal plaster/ linings tiles, pin boards etc.
		· ·

	linings framing glazing	I
	linings, framing, glazing, decoration etc.	
	Refurbishment and alterations	Minor alterations
Doors & Screens	Framing/ Screens/ Doors to new	Internal maintenance and
	buildings including glazing,	redecoration. Repair/
	ironmongery, jointing and internal	replacement of defective doors
	decorations	and screens
All	Glazing to meet statutory Health	Replacement of broken glass
	& Safety requirements	
Sanitary Services		
Lavatories	In new buildings provision of all	Repair/ replacement of damaged
	toilet fittings, waste plumbing and	sanitary ware, fittings, waste
	internal drainage.	plumbing etc.
	Large scale toilet refurbishment	Small areas of refurbishment
	Provision of disabled facilities,	Repair/ replacement of damaged
	and specialist facilities related to	fittings, waste plumbing etc.
	pupils with statements	
Kitchens		
	Kitchens in new buildings	Maintain kitchen to requirements
	complete with fittings, equipment,	of Local Authority – All Schools
	waste plumbing and internal	that are in the School Meals
	drainage. Internal finishes and	contract with the LA and have
	decorations.	their food prepared by Solutions
		SK Limited must return to the
		Council their budget for repairs
		and maintenance of the "heavy
		end" kitchen equipment.
		Cleaning out drainage systems Redecoration
	General refurbishment	Repairs
	Large and costly items of	Repairs/ replacement parts
	equipment	Repairs/ replacement parts
Mechanical services		
Heating/ hot water	Complete heating and hot water	General maintenance of all boiler
	systems to new projects,	house plant including
	including fuel, storage, controls,	replacement of defective parts.
	distribution, flues etc.	Regular cleaning.
		Energy saving projects
	Safe removal of old/ damaged	Monitoring systems
	asbestos boiler and pipe-work	Health & safety issues
	insulation, where risk to Health &	
	Safety.	
	Planned replacement of old	Replacement of defective parts
	boiler/ controls systems past the	
	end of their useful life	
	Emergency replacement of boiler plant/ systems	
Cold water	Provision of cold water services,	Maintenance and repair/
	storage tanks, distribution,	replacement of defective parts
	boosters, hose reels etc. in major	such as servicing pipes. Annual
	projects	servicing of cold water tanks.
Gas	Distribution on new and major	Repairs, maintenance and gas
	refurbishment's, terminal units	safety
		All servicing

Ventilation	Mechanical ventilation/ air	Provision of local ventilation.
	conditioning to major projects	Repair/ replacement of defective systems and units
Other	Swimming pool plant and its complete installation, including heat recovery systems	Repair/ replacement of parts to plant, pumps and controls. Water treatment equipment and all distribution pipe-work. Simple heat recovery systems. Solar heating plant and equipment.
Electrical services	Main putitabas an and distribution	Tooting/ vonleasement of
General	Main switchgear and distribution in major projects.	Testing/ replacement of distribution boards. The repair and maintenance of all switchgear and interconnecting cables including that in temporary buildings.
	Replacement of obsolete and dangerous wiring systems, including distribution boards	All testing, earthing and bonding to meet Health & Safety. All servicing.
Power	Control gear, distribution, fixed equipment, protection	All testing, repair and replacement of small items of equipment
Lighting	Provision of luminaires and emergency	Replacement of luminaires, all testing, adjustments and improvements to emergency
Other	Lightning protection in new build	Repair/ replacement
	Alarm systems, CCTV, lifts/ hoists etc.	Repair and maintenance
	New installation of communication systems, radio/ TV, call, telephone, data transmission, IT etc. and provision in new build.	Repair/ replacement/ maintenance, including all door access systems
External Works		
Pavings	Provision of new roads, car parks, paths, court, terraces, play pitches, steps and handrails, as part of major project, including disabled access	Maintenance and repair Car park and playground markings.
Miscellaneous	Provision of walls, fencing, gates and ancillary buildings as part of major project	Maintenance and repair of all perimeter/ boundary/ retaining walls, fencing and gates.
Drainage	Drains, soakaways, inspection chambers and sewage plant as part of new projects	Maintenance and repair of drains, gullies, grease traps and manholes between buildings and main sewers. Cleaning of the above and unblocking as necessary.
Open air pools	Structure, Hygiene/ safety in new build	Hygiene, cleaning, maintenance and repairs, including replacement parts. Simple energy saving systems.
Services distribution	Heating mains gas mains water mains	Annual servicing

	electricity mains, renewal of any above.	

### Notes

This illustrative list is the DfE interpretation of the CIPFA Code of Practice and Local Authorities should refer to the Code when defining capital and revenue.

Where local authorities use de-minimis limits for defining capital and revenue in their financial accounts, the same de-minimis limits must be used in defining what is delegated. The application of a de-minimis limit may change the examples given in the first two columns of the illustrative list. Sefton adopt a de-minimis level of £10,000 on most Capital expenditure; but £2,000 specifically, in the use of Schools Devolved Capital Funding (DFC)

ANNEX N

## **EXTENDED SERVICES FINANCIAL FRAMEWORK**

# **Background**

The Education Act 2010 gave school governing bodies the powers to provide community facilities that would benefit the school and local community.

Governing bodies cannot provide services that might interfere with their main duty to educate pupils or their responsibility to promote high standards of educational achievement at the school

Extended school activities are carried out under the Governing Body's community facilities powers, the Sefton's Scheme for Financing Schools (section13) sets out the statutory requirements placed on schools wishing to exercise these powers.

# **Accounting for Extended Activities**

The Schools, Children and Families Act 2010 – Section 4 determines:

At least once in every school year the governing body of a maintained school in England shall consider whether, and if so how, they should exercise the power to provide and fund any community facilities, including Extended Services.

Extended Activities can be provided directly by the school or as commissioned provision through a third party. Where a third party is the provider they will have responsibility for the financial management of the activity.

Schools may cross-subsidise community facilities provision from any form of delegated funds after seeking Governing Body approval.

It is recommended that directly provided extended school activities are accounted for within the schools existing financial system (SIMS FMS6). It will be necessary to set up separate cost centre/s.)

Governing Body will need to approve the budget for a school in total, which should be sub-divided between "school" and "community facilities" for governor information where appropriate.

All costs and funding streams are identified and allocated to school or community facilities" including a reasonable apportionment of any share costs including staffing, premises, services and consumables. For nursery schools any contribution from the school budget needs to be clearly identified and agreed by the Governing Body.

Schools may carry-forward any surplus from one financial year to another and old it as a separate community facility surplus. This may be used for "school" purposes.

The flow chart below gives an overview of the accounting arrangements for extended activities that are **directly provided** by the school.

School internal financial regulations will need to be reviewed to reflect community facilities provision including:

- -Budget approval and virements (including approval of any contribution from school budget to community facilities for nursery schools)
- -Budget monitoring reports for governors

- -Authorisation of orders and invoices
- -Use of community facilities surplus for school purposes.
- -Financial Arrangements Voluntary Management Committee (VMC)
- -If you have a VMC:

VMC will need to approve and manage budget and is responsible for financial viability of operation.

School must be represented on VMC

Separate accounting records are maintained completely independent to Authority accounts.

Separate bank account is set up

Treasurer is appointed and accounts are audited independently

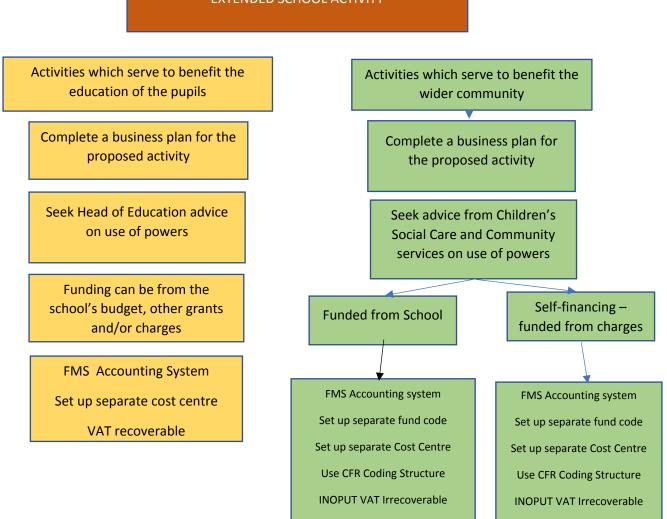
VMC meets all direct costs and is billed for any proportion of shared costs relating to staff, use of premise.

School may subsidise or allow free letting provided that "overall" lettings costs are recovered from users in total, i.e. would need to charge above costs to other users.

### **EXTENDED SCHOOL ACTIVITIES**

**Accounting Flow Chart** 

### **EXTENDED SCHOOL ACTIVITY**



### **Providing Extended Services**

If you are providing a service such as child care or a before or after school club you must ensure that you have a business case which takes full account of the costs the activity, such as staff costs; national insurance; indemnity insurance; superannuation, staff development and SLA costs for payroll and HR support.

#### **Commissioned Activities**

Where Schools commission extended school activities from a third- party provider, the provider will be responsible for the financial management and viability of the enterprise the school must ensure that the provider has suitable financial and personnel arrangements in place to provide that service. Charges made by the school to the provider must at least cover any extra costs incurred by the school in running the extended facilities. Schools should account for any costs incurred and charges made separately from the school budget share. A separate cost centre should be used in the schools SIMS FMS system to separately identify income and expenditure related to the extended school activity. Schools should balance the recovery of expenditure to cover the basic running costs against the principle of providing a service for the local community, taking account of what is deemed affordable when they finalise agreements with their providers.

# **Charging Arrangements**

Charges (where they can be made under legislation) must not exceed actual cost. The basis of charge must be included in the school's charging policy together with any remissions policy for hardship cases.

In relation to charging for study support activities, parents can be charged for activities that occur outside school hours when these activities are not necessary part of the National curriculum or religious education.

Study support must be provided free of charge for high school pupils.

As a general rule schools are encouraged to raise nominal charges for extended school activities to cover basic costs in order to enable maximum access at affordable rates.

### **Financial Returns**

The Sefton Scheme for Financing Schools requires schools operating community facilities and services to provide the Head of Education with financial information about the activities every six months. The information should be in the form of a summary statement showing actual income and expenditure for the previous six months and an estimate of income and expenditure for the next six months.

# **Accounting for VAT on Extended School Activities**

If the Governing Body of a school provides community facilities as an extended school activity in its own right and the income generated is retained by the Governing Body, then input VAT (VAT on purchases) is not recoverable.

Schools operating extended activities in this way will need to set up their SIMS FMS6 extended school activity codes for expenditure with a non-recoverable VAT Tax code P5.

If the Local Authority / Children's Services operates the community facility and retains the income or the Governing Body takes on the community facility on behalf of the Local Authority / Children's Services (under the Local Authorities "powers of well-being" and with a Service Agreement), then input VAT would be recoverable under the Local Authority VAT scheme. In addition if the community facility is for childcare, input VAT is recoverable as following the Chancellors 2005 Budget Statement Local Authorities may now treat this as a non-business activity and recover VAT under the Local Authority refund provisions.

# VAT on the Supply of Staff

In Voluntary and Community Schools the law requires that all staff is employed by the Local Authority / Children's Services. Where the Governing Body is operating extended school facilities they may use existing staff or new staff to run the facilities. Recharges to the extended facility for the cost of these staff are not subject to VAT.

In Voluntary Aided and Foundation Schools the Governing Body is generally the employer. If the school requires additional staff to run the extended facility and the Local Authority provides them, then that is a supply for VAT purposes and may be subject to VAT depending on what is being supplied.

All other goods and services provided to Governing Bodies for the purpose of extended school facilities are subject to VAT at the appropriate rate.

ANNEX Q

### RESPONSIBILITY FOR REDUNDANCY AND EARLY RETIREMENT COSTS

This guidance note summarises the position relating to the charging of voluntary early retirement and redundancy costs. It sets out what is specified in legislation and provides some examples of when it might be appropriate to charge an individual school's budget, the central Schools Budget or the local authority's non-schools budget.

Section 37 of the 2002 Education Act says:

- (4) costs incurred by the local education authority in respect of any premature retirement of a member of the staff of a maintained school shall be met from the school's budget share for one or more financial years except in so far as the authority agree with the governing body in writing (whether before or after the retirement occurs) that they shall not be so met
- (5) costs incurred by the local education authority in respect of the dismissal, or for the purpose of securing the resignation, of any member of the staff of a maintained school shall not be met from the school's budget share for any financial year except in so far as the authority have good reason for deducting those costs, or any part of those costs, from that share.
- (6) The fact that the authority have a policy precluding dismissal of their employees by reason of redundancy is not to be regarded as a good reason for the purposes of subsection (5); and in this subsection the reference to dismissal by reason of redundancy shall be read in accordance with section 139 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18).

The default position, therefore, is that premature retirement costs must be charged to the school's delegated budget, while redundancy costs must be charged to the local authority's budget. In the former case, the local authority has to agree otherwise for costs to be centrally funded, while in the latter case, there has to be a good reason for it not to be centrally funded, and that cannot include having a no redundancy policy. Ultimately, it would be for the courts to decide what a good reason was, but the examples set out below indicate the situations in which exceptions to the default position might be taken.

harge of dismissal/resignation costs to delegated school budget
If a school has decided to offer more generous terms than the authority's policy, then it would be
easonable to charge the excess to the school
If a school is otherwise acting outside the local authority's policy
Where the school is making staffing reductions which the local authority does not believe are necessa
either set a balanced budget or meet the conditions of a licensed deficit
Where staffing reductions arise from a deficit caused by factors within the school's control
Where the school has excess surplus balances and no agreed plan to use these
Where a school has refused to engage with the local authority's redeployment

policy

Charge of premature retirement costs to local authority non-schools budget
☐ Where a school has a long-term reduction in pupil numbers and charging such costs to their budget
would impact on standards
☐ Where a school is closing does not have sufficient balances to cover the costs and where the central
Schools Budget does not have capacity to absorb the deficit
☐ Where charging such costs to the school's budget would prevent the school from complying with a
requirement to recover a licensed deficit within the agreed timescale
☐ Where a school is in special measures does not have excess balances and employment of the relevant staff is being/has been terminated as a result of local authority or government intervention to improve standards

Costs of early retirements or redundancies may only be charged to the central part of the Schools Budget where the expenditure is to be incurred as a result of decisions made before 1st April 2013. Costs may not exceed the amount budgeted in the previous financial year.

A de-delegated contingency could be provided, if Schools Forum agrees, to support individual schools where "a governing body has incurred expenditure which it would be unreasonable to expect them to meet from the school's budget share".

For staff employed under the community facilities power, the default position is that any costs must be met by the governing body, and can be funded from the school's delegated budget if the governing body is satisfied that this will not interfere to a significant extent with the performance of any duties imposed on them by the Education Acts, including the requirement to conduct the school with a view to promoting high standards of educational achievement. Section 37 now states:

- (7) Where a local education authority incur costs—
- (a) in respect of any premature retirement of any member of the staff of a maintained school who is employed for community purposes, or
- (b) in respect of the dismissal, or for the purpose of securing the resignation, of any member of the staff of a maintained school who is employed for those purposes,
- they shall recover those costs from the governing body except in so far as the authority agrees with the governing body in writing (whether before or after the retirement, dismissal or resignation occurs) that they shall not be so recoverable.
- (7A) Any amount payable by virtue of subsection (7) by the governing body of a maintained school in England to the local authority may be met by the governing body out of the school's budget share for any funding period if and to the extent that the condition in subsection 7(B) is met.
- (7B) The condition is that the governing body are satisfied that meeting the amount out of the school's budget share will not to a significant extent interfere with the performance of any duty imposed on them by section 21(2) or by any other provision of the education Acts.
- (8) Where a person is employed partly for community purposes and partly for other purposes, any payment or costs in respect of that person is to be apportioned between the two purposes; and the preceding provisions of this section shall apply separately to each part of the payment or costs.

ANNEX R

# **GLOSSARY OF TERMS**

### SOME KEY TERMS AND PHRASES

The explanations given for the following key terms and phrases are intended to assist understanding. These explanations are not meant to be legally definitive.

**Accounts** - means statements setting out records of income and expenditure.

**Audit Regime** - means the procedures adopted to monitor and evaluate the adequacy and effectiveness of schools' accounting systems and internal financial controls.

Best Value - means the statutory duty placed on local authorities to secure Best Value in respect of the way in which they exercise their functions covering both cost and quality. The new duty is not intended to apply to those functions which are exercised by the Governing Bodies of LA maintained schools. However, schools are encouraged to adopt effective management of resources.

**Budget** - means the representation in financial terms of the Governing Body's plan for a given period of time.

**Budgeting** - means the preparation of estimates of expenditure and income to form a budget. Guidance on budget preparation is provided by the Authority.

**Budget Plan** - means the Governing Body's spending intentions for the financial year, drawn up having regard to curriculum priorities and the overall level of resources available to the school.

(Individual) Budget Share - means a school's share of the Individual Schools Budget for a financial year, worked out using the Authority's funding formula.

**CIPFA** - means the Chartered Institute of Public Finance and Accountancy.

**Capital Expenditure -** means spending on building projects, including new build and (subject to the thresholds determined by the Authority) repairs and maintenance, and large items of equipment.

**Central Services -** means services provided to schools by the Authority, using centrally retained funds from the Schools Budget. Can also refer to the services purchased by schools from the Authority if funds for these services are delegated.

**Competitive Tendering** - means obtaining quotes from a variety of possible providers, (including, for example, the Authority and private sector companies) before awarding contracts for goods and services.

**Delegated Budget -** means the budget share allocated to a school through the application of the funding formula. The spending of the delegated budget is controlled and managed by the Governing Body.

**Delegation -** means the process by which one body or person gives another body or person authority to take decisions on a particular matter.

**Devolved Funding -** means the funding allocated to schools for a specific purpose. Such funding cannot be used to support the general activities of the school and is often referred to as "earmarked funding".

**Earmarked Funds -** means funds allocated to the school separately from the budget share which can only be used for a particular purpose.

**Fair Funding -** means the term used to describe the current legal framework for the operation of local management arrangements in schools. The framework is based on Section 45-53 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, and any subsequent amendments.

**Financial Delegation -** means the concept of financial management by which management units, eg Governing Bodies, are identified and allocated resources to control and manage against a set of objectives. The management unit is held accountable for performance in achieving its objectives.

**Financial Year -** means the 12 months from 1 April to 31 March.

**Formula Funding -** Changes to the Authority's formula arrangements can only be made following consultations with schools.

The formula is no longer subject to approval by the Secretary of State but must meet detailed requirements set out in regulations.

**Instrument of Government** - means the legal document setting out the composition of Governing Bodies.

Internal Financial Regulations - means the rules established by the Governing Body within the school to organise its financial affairs, which includes establishing proper financial management arrangements and accounting procedures, and maintaining a sound system of internal controls including safeguards against fraud. Guidance on appropriate internal financial regulations is provided by the Authority.

**Maintained School** - means any maintained nursery, primary, secondary or special school covered by the Authority's Scheme for Financing Schools.

**Month** - means calendar month.

**Outturn Statement -** means a statement of what the school actually spent for the whole financial year.

**PFI/PPP -** means Private Finance Initiative/Public and Private Partnership. These are Government initiatives aimed at providing better and more cost effective public services, and improving value for money through partnership with the private sector. prescribed - means as laid out in Regulations.

**Public Funds -** means monies provided by the state or local authority for specific purposes.

**Quarter -** means a period of three months beginning on 1 April, 1July, 1 October or 1 January.

Register of Business Interests - means a list, covering both Governors and school staff with significant financial responsibilities, of all business interests such as directorships, significant share holdings, close family or personal ties with any business which may have dealings with the school.

**Regulations -** means subordinate (secondary) legislation that derives its authority from an Act of Parliament. Local Authorities, Governing Bodies and others must keep to relevant regulations by law.

**Revenue Expenditure -** means the resources available to be spent on day-to-day running costs but not on capital projects.

**Schools Budget -** means the total of all expenditure direct and indirect on the Authority's maintained nursery,

primary, secondary and special schools. The Individual Schools Budget is distributed via the funding formula and is the Schools Budget net of any central retention for identified purposes.

**Section 251 Statement -** means the Statement published each year setting out details of the Authority's planned expenditure on education, showing the amounts to be centrally retained, the budget share of each school, the formula used to calculate these budget shares and the detailed budget calculation for each school.

A separate Statement is published after the end of the financial year showing actual expenditure at both central level and for each school, and the balances held in respect of each school. This is known as the 'out turn' statement.

**Service Level Agreement -** means the agreement with the Authority for the delivery of a specified level of services to the school.

**Statutory Provision -** means provision as required by an Act of Parliament or subordinate legislation. the 1998 Act - means the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.

The 2010 Act - means the Education Act 2010.

**The Scheme -** means the Scheme for Financing Schools in Sefton drawn up in accordance with Section 48 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 and approved by the Secretary of State. The Scheme describes the financial controls within which delegation operates in Sefton.

**Unofficial Fund -** means any school fund which is controlled either wholly or in part by members of the staff of the school by reason of their employment in the service of the Education Authority and which has not been designated by the Authority as an official fund.

**Virement -** means the process of transferring funds between one expenditure heading and another.



# **Sefton Council**

# **Financial Regulations for Schools**

Under Section 151 Local Government Act 1972 and Section 114 Local Government Finance Act 1988 and Section 48 and 49 School Standards and Framework Act 1998

April 2019 - issued by the Head of Corporate Resources - S151 Officer

# FINANCIAL REGULATIONS FOR SCHOOLS Contents

1.0 GENERAL CONTEXT	3
2.0 BUDGETARY PROCEDURES	3
2.1 BUDGET ALLOCATIONS	3
2.2 EARMARKED FUNDS	4
2.3 CONTINGENCY FUND	4
2.4 HOW SCHOOLS RECEIVE THEIR BUDGET SHARE	4
3.0 FINANCIAL CONTROL - GENERAL	4
4.0 FINANCIAL SYSTEMS / RECORDS	5
5.0 BANKING AND CASH MANAGEMENT	6
6.0 FINANCIAL CONTROL - CAPITAL	6
7.0 FINANCIAL CONTROL - REVENUE	7
8.0 VOLUNTARY & NON-PUBLIC FUNDS AND TRADING ACCOUNTS	8
9.0 PROMPT PAYMENT OF INVOICES	8
10.0 DEBT MANAGEMENT	9
11.0 AUDIT	9
12.0 RISK MANAGEMENT & INSURANCE	10
13.0 PURCHASING OF GOODS / WORKS / SERVICES	13
14.0 PERSONAL EMPLOYEE EXPENSES	16
15.0 PAYROLL	17
16.0 INCOME	18
17.0 CASH SECURITY	19
18.0 PETTY CASH	20
19.0 LOCAL AUTHORITY CHARGE CARDS	22
20.0 STOCKS AND STORES	22
21.0 SECURITY OF ASSETS	23
22.0 INFORMATION SYSTEMS SECURITY	23
23.0 FRAUD AND CORRUPTION	24
24.0 AUDIT REPORTING AND ESCALATION PROTOCOL	24
Appendix A - Retention of Financial Records	26
Appendix B – Debt Escalation Protocol	27
Appendix C - Inventory Instructions	28
Appendix D – Credit card request and policy	29
Appendix E – Prudential Borrowing Scheme policy	33
Appendix F – Contacts	38

### 1.0 GENERAL CONTEXT

- 1.1 Under the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 all schools are required to have a set of Financial Regulations. Schools can either draft their own regulations or adopt those contained in this document, but these regulations form the minimum standard, and school's own regulations must be no less rigorous than these.
- 1.2 These regulations are established by law and by the Sefton Council's Constitution (Financial and Contract Procedure Rules). They detail the responsibility of Head Teachers and Governors in ensuring the proper administration of the Council's financial affairs.
- 1.3 Under Chapter 9 of the Constitution, Sefton Council's (thereafter the Local Authority [LA]) Head of Corporate Resources (S151) is the Chief Finance Officer designated under Section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972 to be responsible for the proper administration of the LA's financial affairs. To achieve this, rules have been adopted to cover all those schools with delegated management. They are set out in the remainder of this document.
- 1.4 The Head of Corporate Resources (S151) is also responsible under Section 114 of the Local Government Finance Act 1988 to report formally any instance of unlawful expenditure (potential or actual) to the LA's members and external auditors.
- 1.5 The Head of Corporate Resources (S151) or his/her representative has the right to attend at his/her discretion, meetings of Governors and give advice or report on any major financial matter which may be under consideration by the Governors or which may be under consideration by the Local Authority and will affect that school.
- 1.6 These Financial Regulations for Schools should be read in conjunction with the Scheme of Financing Schools, the Schools Contract Procedure Rules and the Council's Financial Procedure Rules.

### 2.0 BUDGETARY PROCEDURES

### 2.1 Budget Allocations

- 2.1.1 Budget allocations for the following financial year are sent to schools by the Local Authority by 28 February.
- 2.1.2 In March, Schools that buy into the School Financial Services SLA will be given advice and support in:
  - estimating budget allocations for a multi-year period;
  - forecasting demography;
  - estimating staffing costs;
  - building a budget for submission to the LA.

- 2.1.3 Each Governing body (or committee), in consultation with the head teacher, must approve an annual budget. The approved budget must be sent to the LA by 30<sup>th</sup> June each year *(1st May for deficit budget plans).*
- 2.1.4 Budgets only generally change for reasons set out in the formula or in the Scheme for Financing Schools. The Schools Funding Pack sets out in detail all funding factors.

### 2.2 Earmarked Funds

2.2.1 The Local Authority may make devolved allocations to the school for specific activities or responsibilities outside the original budget. These sums will be 'earmarked' for those purposes, and you may not assimilate them into the school's budget share. The LA may require any unspent allocations to revert back to the LA.

# 2.3 Contingency Fund

2.3.1 The LA holds a small amount of funding as a contingency for maintained schools facing financial difficulties. This funding has been de-delegated by schools and can be used to support schools with staff reorganisation costs or staff dismissal costs. Schools wishing to draw upon this funding should write to the LA giving details of the situation and full costs. The details would then be forwarded to the Panel representatives for their opinion and agreement.

# 2.4 How Schools Receive their Budget Share

- 2.4.1 Schools not operating their own bank account will be have their funding allocation assigned against the LA's Financial Management System (Agresso).
- 2.4.2 Schools who operate their own local bank account will have their budget share credited directly into school bank accounts each month, as per the funding statement using a LA timetable published at the beginning of each financial year. More details around schools having their own Bank Accounts are contained within the latest Scheme for Financing Schools document.

### 3.0 FINANCIAL CONTROL - GENERAL

- 3.1 The Governing Body must immediately inform the S151 Officer, Head of Corporate Resources, of any matters arising, decision or course of action or proposed decision, proposed course of action or entry of an item of account which may give rise to a report under Section 114 of the 1988 Act (see Regulation 1.3 above).
- 3.2 The Governing Body shall ensure that the Scheme for Financing Schools, Financial Regulations, Financial Procedure Rules & Schools Contract Procedure Rules are observed throughout the school.
- 3.3 The Governing Body shall:
  - ensure that the allocation of resources promotes the aims and values of the school, as per the School Development Plan;

- safeguard the spending of public money from waste or misuse;
- comply with any statutory obligations or requirements of the Local Authority in the management of school finances;
- annually set a balanced budget, and where this is not possible to apply to the Local Authority for a licensed deficit budget, including submitting a recovery plan. The Local Authority cannot write off a school deficit.
- 3.4 The Governing Body is responsible for the control of staff and the security, custody and control of all other resources including plant, buildings (except where they are the responsibility of the Assets and Property Manager), materials, cash and stores appertaining to the school.
- 3.5 The Governing Body is responsible for the overall finances of the school. Day to day financial and management responsibilities must be aligned so that head teachers are responsible for the financial consequences of their decisions. Budgets must be assigned to one authorised budget holder only.
- 3.6 The Governing Body must report to parents annually on its stewardship of the school's finances. This should be in the form of a governance statement regarding how it has fulfilled its responsibilities particularly in relation to its core functions, including:
  - the governance arrangements that are in place, including the remit of any committees;
  - the attendance record of individual governors at board and committee meetings; and
  - an assessment of the effectiveness and impact of the board and any committees with details of any challenges that have arisen.

### 4.0 FINANCIAL SYSTEMS / RECORDS

- 4.1 The S151 Officer: Head of Corporate Resources is responsible for the operation of the LA's accounting system, the form of accounts and the supporting financial records.
- 4.2 All schools are required to keep a commitment accounting system. This must be a locally held system. The LA supports SIMS FMS, however schools can choose a different system if it meets Corporate requirements. Schools are required to maintain suitable back-up arrangements for the local system.
- 4.3 Agresso (the LA's main finance system) shall be the prime system upon which final assessments of financial performance shall be made in conjunction with the school's approved financial statements and Consistent Financial Reporting Return.
- 4.4 Schools must submit financial returns in accordance with required reporting procedures such as corporate requirements and closedown documents published annually. The LA may request additional reports or a change in reporting pattern due to concerns with a school or several schools.

4.5 All documents, invoices etc pertaining to transactions on local accounting systems must be retained in accordance with the requirements set out in Appendix A (Retention of Financial Records).

### Other IT Systems operated by the School - On Line Collection Systems etc

- 4.6 Schools are increasingly using on-line payment systems, and these should be operated and treated in the same way as the Local Authority's own Financial system for the sake of controls and accountability.
- 4.7 Governors must ensure that all financial systems, including associated working procedures and records, accord with good practice, enable schools to meet any statutory requirements and minimise the risk of loss.
- 4.8 This includes ensuring that a complete management trail, allowing financial transactions to be traced from the accounting records to the original document are maintained, together with appropriate controls to ensure that all input and output is genuine, complete, accurate, timely and not previously processed.
- 4.9 Governors and the Head teacher must ensure that internal controls are in place for any systems they operate. Governors and Staff should be confident that transactions will be properly processed and that fraud is detected quickly.
- 4.10 Key internal controls should include:
  - Internal checks checking of 1 person's work by another
  - Separation of Duties ensuring that key tasks are assigned to separate members of staff
  - Systems Manual should be maintained describing how the system works and should operate
  - Staff training in the use of systems
  - There should be adequate notes for guidance around documentation; processes and procedures. This should include a documented and tested disaster recovery plan and that staff are trained accordingly in such procedures
  - Authorisations by key staff to accept transactions at different stages
  - Clear audit trail covering all stages of a transaction from start to finish
- 4.11 The Head of Corporate Resources may offer direction as required regarding the use and operation of financial information and accounting systems.

### 5.0 BANKING AND CASH MANAGEMENT

5.1 The S151 Officer: Head of Corporate Resources has responsibility (delegated to him by Council) for the Treasury Management function (management of debt and the borrowing and investment of money) and arranging and operating the Local Authority's banking facilities. This means that no other officers (head teachers or governors) are empowered to open any kind of bank account, to invest or borrow any money, or to enter any credit arrangement. The exception on bank accounts is where schools are given permission to open accounts in accordance with the Local Authority's Scheme for financing maintained schools.

- 5.2 The Head of Corporate Resources: S151 Officer will approve a Scheme of Operation for maintaining the LA's bank accounts.
- 5.3 Schools wishing to operate their own bank account must use a local bank account. Schools can choose to bank using a sub-account of the LA's bank or with any other approved bank.
- 5.4 Schools must comply with the reporting and operating requirements specified by Schools Finance, details of which can be found in the School Bank Account Procedure Manual (below). Note this manual is for schools operating a bank account for payments only, operating on an imprest basis within the Council's banking arrangements (ie as a sub-account of Sefton's main bank account). Details in respect of schools wishing to operate their own independent bank account may be found in the Scheme for Financing Schools document within Section 3.



If, in the judgement of the Head of Corporate Resources (S151), a school fails to carry out the processes and requirements of running a bank account or reporting satisfactorily, ultimately a Notice of Concern may be issued, or in extreme cases withdrawal of the delegated budget as per the Scheme for Financing Schools.

#### 6.0 FINANCIAL CONTROL - CAPITAL

- Authority for expenditure of devolved capital funding is conferred on the Governing Body insofar as it relates to a project identified within the capital programme as agreed by the LA (normally via the School Asset Management Plan).
- 6.2 Schools are not permitted to undertake a capital project (a project costing over £15,000 to acquire or provide land, buildings or ICT hardware) without notifying the Head of Education and schools have no power to borrow externally to meet capital expenditure requirements.
- 6.3 The levels of authority within schools for capital expenditure shall be those defined in the school's own financial regulations, but it is recommended that these should be no greater than those specified in 7.3 below.
- 6.4 Energy schemes, which relate to capital investment projects that would see future savings from green energy efficiency generation, but are repayable over several years, should be entered with caution. Not all schemes are government approved. Certain schemes are deemed as not borrowing, and can only be entered after checking the finer detail of the contract. Schools must speak to the Energy team or the Central Purchasing Unit (CPU) for schools with an SLA at the earliest opportunity before entering any agreements.
- 6.5 Schools should ensure they have the funding to carry out capital expenditure prior to ordering the equipment or works.

- 6.6 Schools must seek permission of Corporate Finance Capital Team to capitalise any revenue funds (even if planned in budget prep), prior to **any** order being placed for works/equipment etc.
- 6.7 In considering an item of a capital nature, Governors should have due regard to the most efficient use of resources including the general requirements on value for money and health and safety and comply with Contract Procedure Rules.

### 7.0 FINANCIAL CONTROL - REVENUE

- 7.1 Authority for expenditure of delegated revenue funding is conferred on the Governing Body insofar as it relates to spending for the purpose of the school as outlined in the Scheme for Financing Schools or additional purposes as prescribed by the Secretary of State under Section 49.
- 7.2 Schools can use some of their budget share to meet the cost of capital expenditure on their premises. This is known as 'capitalising revenue' where revenue is transferred to capital. In all cases where revenue is to be capitalised, schools must ensure:
  - a) That using revenue will not cause a revenue deficit in the next two years;
  - b) That all available capital funds have already been exhausted.
  - c) That they seek permission from Corporate Finance Capital Team, prior to ordering **any** works/equipment etc (even if the amounts were planned in budget prep).

If donations are due from external sources e.g. Parent Teacher Associations etc, to cover or contribute towards capital items or works, then the donations must be receipted first, or within the same financial year.

If the premises are owned by the LA, or the school has voluntary controlled status, the governing body must seek the consent of the LA to the proposed works. The consent of the LA would only be withheld if there were grounds in respect to Health and Safety.

- 7.3 The Governing Body may choose to delegate responsibility for some levels of expenditure, as defined in the school's own financial regulations, but these levels should normally be no greater than: -
  - I. Up to £10,000 by approval from Head teacher
  - II. £10,001 £20,000 by Governors Sub Committee
  - III. Above £20,000 Governing Body

It is however a matter for each Governing Body to determine such limits and any variation from the recommended levels must be recorded in the Governors' minutes and notified to the Head of Education and the Head of Corporate Resources.

7.4 Schools may vire money from one budget heading to another within their delegated budget, but not at the expense of statutory duties. The Governing Body should decide the appropriate levels of delegated responsibility to the head

teacher for virements. This should be recorded either in the school's financial regulations or in Governing Body minutes.

No virement responsibility levels are specified in the Scheme, other than the overall limit of the delegated budget.

- 7.5 Schools are required to maintain up-to-date budgets and profiles for Budget reporting each month. When additional funding is received, schools should adjust the budget and profiles to reflect the increase.
- 7.6 Under existing regulations, the only type of lease agreement that can be entered into by a State funded school (without prior specific approval), is an Operating Lease. Finance leases require prior Secretary of State approval, as they are treated as borrowing, which is strictly controlled. Permission to enter a Finance lease is rarely granted.
- 7.7 Operating leases may however, be entered into, using schools' revenue funds, so long as to do so, would not take the school into a deficit position. Funds must be available to pay the lease rental payments over the period of the lease. Under an Operating Lease, a school is only required to pay a proportion of the capital value of the equipment over an agreement term that is shorter than the equipment's 'useful economic life.' Schools can usually enter into operating leases where, over the period of the lease, the school pays 90% of the cost of the equipment and ownership does not automatically transfer to the school at the end of the agreement.
- 7.8 Schools Devolved Capital Funding (DFC) <u>may not</u> be used towards paying for Operating Leases in respect of equipment or facilities, as ownership of the leased asset does not pass to the school at the end of the agreement. Under a Finance Lease, ownership would pass to the school, however, as mentioned above, to enter a Finance lease requires the permission of the Secretary of State, which is seldom granted.
- 7.9 DFC is only used for the direct purchase of assets, e.g equipment; or towards the costs of repair or building work with a value above £2,000.
- 7.10 If a deficit materialises within community facilities, and there are insufficient prior years surplus funds to cover the deficit, then the school must bring the community facility back into balance before applying any schools budget i.e. the community facility must be sustainable going forward in its own right.

### 8.0 VOLUNTARY & NON-PUBLIC FUNDS AND TRADING ACCOUNTS

8.1 Voluntary funds must be registered with the Local Authority and be accounted for separately from the public funding and audited annually by an auditor, who is completely independent of the school. A copy of the auditor's certificate must be sent to Schools Finance. This is to ensure proper stewardship of non-public funds.

8.2 Any voluntary fund held by a school, where income from all sources exceeds £5,000 pa, should be registered with the Charity Commission. This is the minimum requirement for registration and would particularly apply to funds governed by a Charitable Trust for the 'advancement of Education', rather than funds designated for 'educational purposes'. This latter funding will not be an exclusively charitable purpose, because the designation is revocable. The distinction is a fine one and schools should seek the advice of the Charity Commission where there is any uncertainty (see below).

www.charitycommission.gov.uk

- 8.3 Any voluntary fund with a taxable income or expenditure greater than the limit specified by HM Customs and Excise (currently £81,000) must be registered for VAT.
- 8.4 A copy of the annual accounts of any trading units controlled by the school must be sent to Schools Finance.

### 9.0 PROMPT PAYMENT OF INVOICES

- 9.1 Under the Late Payments of Commercial Debt (Interest) Act 1998, interest may be payable to suppliers where invoices are not paid within 30 days of receipt or as specified in the contract terms. Schools are responsible for date stamping invoices upon receipt and ensuring prompt payment of their invoices. Any charges incurred because of the school delaying payment shall be borne by the school.
- 9.2 Construction Industry Tax Scheme (CIS) reporting where a contract is between the school/governing body and a subcontractor (i.e. not with the Local Authority) CIS reporting is not required. This means that schools can pay the subcontractor direct and do not have to report these invoices via the Tax Officer. Where there are major capital works the contract is usually (but not in all cases) between the subcontractor and the Local Authority. Where this is the case invoices are paid by the Local Authority and will be reported for CIS purposes.

# 10.0 DEBT MANAGEMENT

- 10.1 Income / debt should ideally be managed and collected in accordance with procedures set by the Head of Corporate Resources (S151), in consultation with Corporate Finance Accounts Receivable Team.
- 10.2 The Governing Body is responsible for the collection of income and the management of debt relating to the school, and must adopt any procedures and targets set by the LA for the reduction of outstanding debt.
- 10.3 All schools should have an escalation procedure to ensure effective debt management, like that shown in Appendix B (Debt Management Escalation Protocol)

- 10.4 The Governing Body may write off debts to a limit of £500. For amounts greater than this, approval is required from the Head of Corporate Resources (S151).
- 10.5 When there are disputes relating to debts internal to the LA, these shall be resolved by the Head of Corporate Resources (S151) and the Principal Lawyer, Corporate Legal Services, after the debt has been outstanding for more than six months.

### **11.0 AUDIT**

- 11.1 Under the Scheme of Delegation, the Chief Internal Auditor shall:
  - (a) maintain an adequate and effective internal audit of all the activities of the LA;
  - (b) have authority to visit all schools and have a right of access at all times to such documents, other records, computer systems, and LA property as appear to him/her necessary for the purpose of the audit;
  - (c) be entitled to require from any Governor or school employee such information and explanation as he/she thinks necessary to satisfy himself/herself on any matter.
- 11.2 The Governing Body shall bring immediately to the notice of the Chief Internal Auditor any suspected or apparent financial irregularity affecting the School or the Local Authority. If the irregularity is confirmed, the Head of Corporate Resources (S151), shall be advised.
- 11.3 Internal Audit shall test or examine financial arrangements and financial procedures in schools to ensure standards of internal control are adequate.
- 11.4 Attention is drawn to the statutory role of the LA's external auditors (currently Ernst & Young), which involves the same rights of access and entitlement as those set out for Internal Audit in Regulation 11.1.

### 12.0 RISK MANAGEMENT & INSURANCE

### Strategy

- 12.1 The S151: Head of Corporate Resources, has delegated powers to establish and maintain a systematic strategy, framework and processes for managing risk including insurance. Part of the strategy is to identify the risks facing the organisation and analyse what types of insurance protection are required to manage adverse risks.
- 12.2 This strategy does not obviate the need for each Governing Body to manage all forms of business and operational risk with the running of the School and its activities.
- 12.3 National College for Teaching and Leadership outlines the benefits of integrating risk management within the school governance to help ensure the reasonable achievement of the schools strategic and operational objectives. Schools should

- use a formal methodology, for example the Councils Risk Management Handbook, to identify, assess and manage risks.
- 12.4 The Governing Body should receive regular formal assessments of the current risks affecting the School and their proposed mitigation to help provide reasonable assurance on the achievement of the School's objectives.

# Insurance Programme

- 12.5 Effective insurance is one element of that strategy which can be underwritten by insurance policies to give a measure of financial protection against loss.
- 12.6 The S151: Head of Corporate Resources has authority delegated by Council to effect and manage insurance cover for specific risks and decide what is the most appropriate package of internal (self-funded) and external insurance.
- 12.7 Schools have the option of buying into the Local Authority's insurance scheme or buying insurance cover from an external insurer, however any alternative insurance cover must not be less than that provided by the Local Authority's scheme.
- 12.8 In accordance with the Scheme for Financing Schools, the evidence required to demonstrate parity of cover should be reasonable, not place an undue burden upon the school, nor act as a barrier to the school exercising their choice of supplier
- 12.9 The Local Authority must be named on all insurance policies.
- 12.10 The S151: Head of Corporate Resources shall keep a register of all insurance policies held and a full record of what property and risks are covered thereby.
- 12.11 A brief statement of the main policies taken out by the Local Authority is given here. Where additional cover is required schools must contact the Insurance Section for advice to avoid duplication of existing insurance arrangements.

# Centrally arranged policies are: -

- Fire and associated risks for all buildings which the Local Authority owns, or for which it has accepted legal responsibility by way of a lease or licence.
- Public and employers' liability, including libel, slander, professional indemnity, officials' indemnity and land charges.
- Personal accident cover for risk of assault on employees of the Local Authority and for injury to Local Authority members and authorised volunteers.
- Travel Insurance is available to all employees undertaking business trips and to all pupils on school trips. The main heads of cover relate to personal accident, medical, travel and cancellation expenses and personal property and money.
- Motor vehicles comprehensive cover on all Local Authority vehicles, together with contingent liability cover for use of privately owned vehicles used on official business.

- Pecuniary loss (money, fidelity guarantee and cheques indemnity).
- Costs of reinstatement and recovery of business data and ensuring business continuity protection for ICT infrastructure and systems.

Details of the policy numbers, name of current underwriters or information on the scope of cover or policy terms and conditions are available from the Insurance Section.

12.12 The Local Authority insurance does not cover Non-Public Funds.

# Notification of Changes of Risk

- 12.13 Governing Bodies shall give prompt notification to the Insurance Section of all new risks, property, vehicles and other assets or contractual obligations which require to be insured and alterations that may affect existing insured risks (including closure of buildings, sale of vehicles or disposals of other insured assets).
- 12.14 Where contracts are to be entered for services to be provided to an external party, the Insurance Section must be consulted on appropriate levels of cover before the terms are agreed. For lettings to casual users, insurance cover can be obtained via the Insurance Section. For lettings to regular or commercial users, the hirer should obtain their own insurance cover, which should cover legal liability.
- 12.15 Provision of indemnities which may assume legal liability for the actions of another party must not be accepted without full consultation with the Local Authority's legal advisers and if accepted must also be notified to the Insurance Section.
- 12.16 Governing Bodies must formally assess their insurance requirements at least annually. To avoid action that may unintentionally negate existing insurances, Governing Bodies must seek advice from the Insurance Section if additional insurance cover is purchased.
- 12.17 Governing Bodies are responsible for ensuring that all assets are included on inventory records, in accordance with Financial Regulation 21 below (Security of Assets) and Appendix C.
- 12.18 If a school converts to an academy school any Local Authority Insurance cover will cease at the date of conversion.

# Reporting of incidents, losses and potential claims

- 12.19 Schools must make a written report of any event, loss, liability or damage which may result in an insurance claim and give full and timely assistance with the conduct of any investigation which may follow. Advice must be sought immediately from the Insurance Section if there is a suspicion that a civil legal action is in prospect.
- 12.20 Civil procedure rules and protocols must be strictly adhered to in order to avoid cost penalties or unnecessary litigation expenses. Employees and other persons

- must not admit liability, attempt to negotiate a settlement, give interviews, make statements or offer to pay compensation in any way that may prejudice any civil legal action which may be brought subsequently against the Local Authority.
- 12.21 The same incident may lead to an investigation for an alleged breach of or failure to comply with some part of the Health and Safety at Work Act and the regulations made thereunder.

### Use of motor vehicles

- 12.22 All staff using their own private vehicles on behalf of the School shall maintain appropriate insurance cover for business use. Schools should check on an annual basis and keep a record that:
  - The staff member has a full valid Driving Licence
  - Check the number of points that is on the Driving Licence through the DVLA
  - The vehicle is currently insured with business use
  - There is a valid and current MOT for the vehicle, where relevant
- 12.23 Requirements for all Drivers, Departments and Schools using minibuses are:
  - MIDAS Scheme Driver Training run under the Community Transport Umbrella
  - Drivers should have either a Category D or D1 on their driving licence or passed their driving test before 1997 which gave them automatic D1 (Grandfather rights)
  - CPC Government scheme that is legal requirement for drivers
- 12.24 All school/college minibuses require a Section 19 Permit (Not for Profit / voluntary groups), which must be displayed prominently. In the absence of a permit, drivers of minibuses require a Passenger Carrying Vehicle (PCV) licence. Drivers must be authorised to drive School or LA owned or hired vehicles before use
- 12.25 If money is taken for the school trip that is classed as Hire and Reward and must be run under an Operator's Licence
- 12.26 It is essential that all establishments set up a procedure for checking annually the driving licences for all approved drivers, who drive school minibuses for example, for endorsements received during the previous 12 months. Details of endorsements should be referred to the Insurance Team.
- 13.0 PURCHASING OF GOODS / WORKS / SERVICES

### Separation of Duties

- 13.1 The four elements of ordering and invoice processing should, as far as possible, be carried out by separate people, i.e.
  - a) order completion, including authorisation;
  - b) checking that goods have been received as ordered, including certifying invoices to show that goods have been received;
  - c) checking off invoices against copy orders for correctness of price and ensuring items have not been previously passed for payment;

- d) authorising invoices for payment.
- 13.2 In such circumstances where this separation is impractical, as a minimum the person checking that the goods per invoice have been received must not be the person authorising the order and/or certifying the invoice. This must be the exception, and only applied where the full separation of duties as outlined in 13.1 is not possible.

# Use and Control of Official Stationery

- 13.3 If applicable, blank orders must be held securely, used sequentially, and all orders should be accounted for with any cancelled orders crossed through and retained.
- 13.4 Copy orders must be retained in accordance with Retention of Records and filed in an orderly manner and marked clearly to show items received and paid for.

### Raising Orders for Goods / Work / Services

- 13.5 All orders must be signed by the appropriate Budget Holder or by a person who is authorised to sign orders on his/her behalf.
- Lists of Council approved suppliers, including those in framework agreements, are updated and sent to schools on a regular basis for information. Wherever possible, schools are encouraged to use approved Local Authority suppliers for all purchases made. However, they are not compelled to use these. In such instances, where a school wishes to use a supplier, who is not on the Council's approved list, they are encouraged to advise the supplier to formally register with the Council as an official supplier, before any transactions are agreed. This may be done through the Council's internet, and offers some safeguard against fraudulent suppliers. Where no approved supplier can provide the goods/works/services, the CPU should be contacted for advice (for schools opting into their SLA.)
- 13.7 The Schools Contract Procedure Rules contained within the Scheme for Financing Schools (Annex E) must be followed in respect of all purchases. If a project is being accounted for through the school's account but is being managed by an external organisation (i.e. providing funding, arranging quotes/tenders, and appointing a contractor) the school needs to have an email/letter from the external organisation retained on file stating this. Otherwise the school is responsible for obtaining and retaining the quotes., i.e. the school must either demonstrate compliance with Contract Procedure Rules or have something in writing to evidence why they have not needed to comply.
- 13.8 Oral (telephone) orders must only be made with the prior knowledge and approval of the Budget Holder and should be confirmed immediately afterwards by raising an official order clearly annotated "Confirmatory Order" and signed by the Budget Holder.
- 13.9 Orders made over the internet must comply with the Schools Charge Card Procedures

- 13.10 The Budget Holder must authorise all orders raised.
- 13.11 When authorising the order, the Budget Holder is responsible for ensuring that the order:
  - (a) is completed properly;
  - (b) complies with Financial Regulations, Contract Procedure Rules and EU directives:
  - (c) is appropriate for school purposes;
  - (d) offers the most favourable terms for price delivery and quality for the school;
  - (e) can be covered by the appropriate budget.
  - (f) Where goods are ordered and approved electronically, there must be an authorised requisition retained on file.

### Payment of Accounts

13.12 Budget Holders and other authorised signatories are given authority by the school to authorise invoices for payment. Each authoriser is required to certify that the invoice is correct, necessary, and relevant to the school, prior to being paid.

For School operating their own bank accounts/ using Sefton Local Cheque facility - On no account should cheques be signed that are blank i.e. have no supplier details or no amount on the cheque.

- 13.13 Cheques being processed by school staff must be sequential, and follow on from each other. It is the responsibility of the authorised signatories to check the next available cheque on their system matches the cheque book or next pre-printed cheque sheet. If numbers do not match it must be investigated as to the reason for this, and record the reason. Cheque books must be kept secure (this includes pre-printed cheque sheets).
- 13.14 Head teachers should, at least annually, perform spot checks on the payment system to check:
  - Cheque number sequences do run on
  - Invoices match cheque amounts
  - Unreconciled items (e.g. unpresented cheques) are checked and reviewed
  - Check cheques are stored safely
  - Check cancelled/spoiled cheques have been retained
- 13.15 A register of specimen signatures of those authorised to pay accounts must be maintained by the school.
- 13.16 In certifying the invoice, the authoriser is responsible for ensuring that:
  - (a) Payment is only made where goods or services have been received or carried out and examined as to quantity and quality. (Note: in certain limited circumstances such as payment of course fees, payment may be required in advance. In these circumstances, if unavoidable, payment may be made provided proper procedures are introduced that ensure that the goods/services paid for are received and are of sufficient quality and if not a refund obtained).

- (b) The expenditure is lawful (i.e. within the powers of the Local Authority).
- (c) Purchases are only made for Local Authority purposes. Staff and any other organisations are not permitted to use Local Authority orders for non-Local Authority purchases.
- (d) The prices, discounts and other allowances are correct, and that all calculations on the invoice (including VAT) are arithmetically correct.
- (e) The expenditure is within budget limits.
- (f) The invoice has not previously been passed for payment.
- (g) Head teachers must regularly perform reviews of the unreconciled items list to ensure all payments are made and investigations are undertaken where balances are remaining for long periods unclear/unreconciled.
- 13.17 Virtually all VAT charged to the Local Authority by suppliers can and must be reclaimed. VAT must be coded out separately, otherwise schools and the Local Authority are bearing an unnecessary cost. For more detailed information or guidance on VAT issues, see the Scheme for Financing Schools document (ANNEX I), and/or contact the Corporate Finance Team (0151 934 4108).
- 13.18 Copy invoices and invoices that are hand-written or have no VAT registration number should be subject to thorough checks to establish their validity, and checks made to ensure that they have not been previously passed for payment. Statements of account must not be passed for payment.
- 13.19 Proforma invoices should not be used as a substitute for a creditor's proper invoice and, where possible, should be supported by correspondence or such other documentation as may be necessary to establish that payment is due. Where VAT is payable on advance payments, a VAT receipt must be obtained and filed.
- 13.20 All invoices must be paid within 30 days of receipt or within the time limits specified by suppliers. Therefore, all invoices must be date-stamped upon receipt, certified and authorised as per paragraph 13.15, and paid promptly. Any delays could result in the payment of interest charges by the school.
- 13.21 VAT receipts for purchases under £250 only need to have a VAT number. It is acceptable for the school to calculate the VAT, and add a description to the receipt of the type of goods purchased if not already shown.
- 13.22 Advice on whether a payment is lawful can be obtained from Schools Finance, or Accounts Payable. Any suspicion that a payment is not lawful must be reported to the Chief Internal Auditor.

#### 14.0 PERSONAL EMPLOYEE EXPENSES

14.1 Payroll providers have a responsibility to provide the HMRC with details of all benefits in kind provided or expenses reimbursed to its employees, and must

- ensure that income tax and national insurance contributions are collected on all qualifying expenditure.
- 14.2 Where schools fail to comply with the procedures set out by the HMRC or payroll provider, their own individual budgets will be charged with any tax, national insurance, interest and penalties assessed on the school.
- 14.3 All employee expenses claims must be approved by the claimant's line manager and by the appropriate Budget Holder as being correct and in accordance with the requirements of the service.
- 14.4 Staff must not authorise their own claims. Head teachers should get claims authorised by the Chair of Finance, or the deputy head/senior teacher. If the deputy head/senior teacher authorise claims, the Chair of Finance should review the claims on a quarterly basis.
- 14.5 The Budget Holder is responsible for:
  - (a) ensuring that payments are only made to bona fide employees who are eligible to receive payments at that time according to current rules laid down by the LA;
  - (b) ensuring that payments are in accordance with current rates;
  - (c) making prompt, complete and accurate returns to HR/Payroll providers, of information needed for returns to the HMRC such as cars provided to employees outside the normal lease car scheme, telephones, living accommodation etc, and any other possible taxable benefits.
- 14.6 All claims for reimbursement of expenditure by individuals must be processed through the school's payroll system and not via the school imprest, petty cash or, if applicable, bank account.
- 14.7 Claims must be made using the appropriate claim forms, with supporting receipts where applicable.
- 14.8 Schools can reclaim VAT on mileage claims, if deemed worthwhile. Such claims would need to have petrol receipts for the period with at least the amount of VAT being reclaimed.
- 14.9 Leavers must be notified to the school's HR provider and payroll provider to reclaim any repayment of expenses due. Relocation and training expenses can be repayable if the employee leaves within a specified period.

### 15.0 PAYROLL

- 15.1 The school's payroll provider is responsible for making payment of all salaries, wages, gratuities, compensation and other emoluments to all current and former employees of the school.
- 15.2 The rules for determining whether an individual is treated as an employee or as self-employed for tax purposes are complex, and there are severe penalties for

failing to deduct tax where it is due. Budget Holders should refer to their HR or Payroll provider for advice where necessary. Schools must ensure they follow HR advice, on workers legal status, i.e. employed or self-employed (and document these checks). This is to ensure the correct level of NI and PAYE is paid over to HMRC, as HMRC may deem that a person should have been employed through payroll and not paid directly.

- 15.3 It is the head teacher's (or other delegated person's) responsibility to ensure that: -
  - (a) payments are correct (compared to the school staff spreadsheet), authorised and accounted for properly;
  - (b) payments are made only to bona-fide employees of the school and to valid beneficiaries of the Pension and Compensation Schemes;
  - (c) allowances and deductions are authorised, correct and are properly accounted for and the persons in receipt of allowances are eligible for them;
  - (d) payments are lawful (i.e. within the powers of the Local Authority);
  - (e) payments are within budget.
  - (f) The payroll provider validation reports, setting out the payment of employees for each given month must be signed off, within 4 days, as being accurate, by the head teacher (this is not to be delegated), prior to the payroll payment run.
- 15.4 Governors must ensure that payroll procedures are being operated in accordance with current local and statutory guidance and financial regulations.
- 15.5 The head teacher must ensure that the appointment of all employees is in accordance with the policies of the Governing Body, at the approved grades and rates of pay.
- 15.6 No person may authorise any notification to the payroll provider concerning amendments to his/her own pay.
- 15.7 The school's payroll provider must be notified as soon as possible, in a form acceptable to them, of all matters affecting payroll payments, such as appointments, dismissals, resignations and retirements, or any other change of circumstances affecting remuneration.
- 15.8 The school's payroll provider must be notified of all information to ensure that the correct deductions are made for pensions contributions, Income Tax, National Insurance, sickness and maternity pay, and other miscellaneous deductions.
- 15.9 All documents sent to the school's payroll provider should identify clearly to whom they relate, i.e. by showing the name, payroll reference number and/or job title and place of work.
- 15.10 Where a school does not purchase a Service Level Agreement for payroll and personnel services from the Local Authority, they will be required to provide full

details to the Authority of their expenditure and personnel data on an individual transaction/employee basis at the end of each month.

#### **16.0 INCOME**

- 16.1. It is the Budget Holder's responsibility to ensure that procedures for the collection or invoicing of income due are operating such that:
  - (a) all income due is identified and accounted for properly;
  - (b) invoices for income due (or credit notes) are raised as soon as the chargeable goods or services are provided;
  - (c) all monies received are brought into account promptly, correctly, accurately and completely;
  - (d) all income collected is held securely, banked promptly and intact;
  - (e) VAT is accounted for correctly. (For further information, see detailed Guidance on Value Added Tax Scheme for Financing Schools document ANNEX I which includes VAT categories and advice on individual Income account codes).
- 16.2 All income received must be recorded on the school's prime accounting records.
- 16.3 All monies received must be receipted in a receipt book or otherwise adequately recorded (e.g. dinner register) at the time of receipt, and be reconciled to the bank paying in slip.
- 16.4 Receipts should also be provided for Non-Public Fund money.
- 16.5 For remittances where receipts are not always issued (e.g. settlement of debtor's invoices) an accounting record (such as a remittance list) must be made immediately on receipt.
- 16.6 Each person responsible for paying money into a bank account must enter onto the copy paying-in slip sufficient information to identify each transaction including the amount of the cheque and a reference (such as receipt number or debtor name) to connect the cheque with the service provided. On the back of each cheque the person should enter sufficient detail to identify the school.
- 16.7 On handing cash over to another person, all employees should ensure that they receive a suitable formal acknowledgement such as a receipt.
- 16.8 To ensure adequate separation of duties within the cash collection and banking process, so far as is possible, different people should undertake the following activities:
  - (a) collecting or receiving money;
  - (b) recording and banking receipts;
  - (c) reviewing and reconciling receipts to cash banked;

- (d) authorisation of debt write-offs;
- (e) custody of saleable stock and materials.
- 16.9 Where the number of staff is not sufficient to allow such separation, as a minimum, the person responsible for reviewing and reconciling receipts to cash banked and/or authorising debt write-offs should not be the person responsible for collecting and/or banking receipts. This must be the exception, and only applied where the full separation of duties as outlined in 16.8 is not possible.
- 16.10 Regular reconciliations of amounts collected (per till rolls, receipts etc.) to cash banked as recorded on copy paying-in slips should be carried out, by someone independent of the persons carrying out the receipting, recording and banking of income.

### 17.0 CASH SECURITY

- 17.1 All persons involved in cash handling have a duty to ensure that practice and procedures properly safeguard cash holdings in their possession, **but not at any risk to their own person**.
- 17.2 Head teachers must ensure that written procedures exist covering the aspects of cash security covered below, and what action staff are to take in emergencies, e.g. attempted theft; fire alarms etc.
- 17.3 Head teachers must ensure that adequate arrangements are made to safeguard monies pending banking and within insurance levels. Such arrangements include:
  - (a) use of locked cashboxes held in a safe or locked drawer or cabinet;
  - (b) restricted access to the keys for the above;
  - (c) locking cash away when unattended;
  - (d) not counting cash or accessing the safe etc. in view of visitors and members of the public;
  - (e) where large amounts are collected, considering the physical security of the cashier's office (e.g. access arrangements to the cashier's area; screens; alarm systems etc).
  - It is a condition precedent to the liability of the insurer that whenever the office, room or area in which the safe or strong room containing money is situated is unattended:
  - (a) Such safe or strong room will be securely locked
  - (b) Any key and records of a code to such a safe or strong room will be removed from the premises or kept on the person of an authorised person except where a portion of the premises is occupied residentially by the insured or any

employee when any key and record of a code will be removed from the business portion of the premises.

- 17.4 Head teachers must ensure that banking arrangements minimise monies held, do not exceed insurance levels and minimise the risk to staff undertaking the banking. Such arrangements include:
  - (a) measures to minimise actual cash (e.g. use of cheques and debit/credit cards);
  - (b) regular banking, to avoid cash and cheques on site exceeding maximum safe limit
  - (c) use of night safe facilities when banks are not open;
  - (d) varying the timing and route of visits to the bank, and the staff undertaking the banking;
  - (e) not utilising conspicuous bags etc. to transport monies;
  - (f) Headteachers must not allow levels of cash and cheques held to exceed the maximum permitted limits set under the insurance policy for monies held in a safe during working hours and overnight. The value will differ from school to school depending upon the type of safe in school and the schools should contact the Insurance Team 0151 9344061 for further advice

#### 18.0 PETTY CASH

18.1 Petty cash can be held within the school providing that there are suitable arrangements in place for safeguarding the cash and that it is recorded using the school's financial system. Guidance on the day to day operation of petty cash imprest can be found below -



### <u>Inappropriate Expenditure</u>

- 18.2 The following expenditure must not be made through Petty Cash: -
  - (a) payment of salaries or wages to staff or payments which could be considered as such by the Inland Revenue e.g. honoraria;
  - (b) payment of any expenses to employees;
  - (c) payment for items which can be acquired using a Procurement Card (see Government Procurement Card Procedures Guide).

### Supporting Documentation

- 18.3 Claims must be supported by adequate documentation to support the expenditure incurred. This should demonstrate that the expenditure is bona-fide, lawful and in accordance with the requirements of the service. The documentation should record:
  - (a) the reason for/details of the expenditure;
  - (b) date expenditure was incurred;
  - (c) amount of expenditure; there is an upper limit of £35 per item
  - (d) signature of person incurring the expenditure;
- 18.4 Wherever possible the supporting documentation must be a VAT invoice/receipt to enable the VAT element to be reclaimed. Failure to obtain such a voucher means that the school budget will have to bear the VAT element of any expenditure.

# Separation of Duties

- 18.5 There must be a separation of duties between the persons operating the petty cash system and reconciling it.
- 18.6 The person operating the petty cash must not be a cheque signatory.
- 18.7 An independent person should annually:
  - (a) check that the documentation supporting petty cash is complete and satisfactory;
  - (b) check that the petty cash reconciliation statement is correct both in principle and arithmetically;
  - (c) physically checking the figures in the reconciliation statement;
  - (d) count the cash in hand, and ensure it agrees to the amount entered within the records.

### Petty Cash Levels

- 18.8 The level of cash held should be reviewed annually to ensure they it is set at an appropriate level.
- 18.9 Head teachers will request and the Head of Corporate Resources will control increases, decreases and repayments of imprest / floats as required.
- 18.10 Schools shall not create imprest or floats from any sources other than those issued by the Head of Corporate Resources.

### 19.0 LOCAL AUTHORITY CHARGE CARDS

19.1 Schools are able to use the LA's Charge card scheme and further guidance can be found below and at Appendix D:



- 19.2 Schools may apply for more than one charge card via the Finance Department's Treasury Management Team. Each charge card is assigned to an individual cardholder who has personal responsibility for its proper operation, in accordance with this Regulation. Charge cards must not be used for private use.
- 19.3 The Head teacher is responsible for ensuring that all staff assigned a charge card are operating procedures such that:
  - (a) cards are safeguarded from theft and misuse;
  - (b) expenditure incurred using charge cards is bona-fide, lawful and in accordance with the requirements of the service;
  - (c) expenditure is within budget limits

This will require the Head teacher to perform management checks regularly to check receipts match up to card payments, and are all for school expenditure only.

#### 20.0 STOCKS AND STORES

- 20.1 The school will hold stocks and stores of some items needed on a day-to-day basis.
- 20.2 The Head teacher is responsible for ensuring that adequate procedures and financial controls are in place to ensure the appropriate use of these assets, such that:
  - (a) records and procedures are sufficient to identify transactions and the volume and value of all usable stocks/stores held;
  - (b) stocks and stores are properly secured;
  - (c) best value is obtained in the provision of stocks and stores.

### **Best Value**

- 20.3 In general, stocks/stores should be maintained at minimum levels consistent with operational requirements.
- 20.4 Order quantities should be calculated to obtain economies in purchasing consistent with minimising investments in stocks.
- 20.5 Where stocks have a limited shelf life or are liable to obsolescence, stores should be used on a first in first out basis.
- 20.6 Disposal of surplus or obsolete stocks/stores must be undertaken in accordance with the guidance provided in the Scheme for Financing Schools.

### 21.0 SECURITY OF ASSETS

- 21.1 This Regulation applies to all assets (owned or leased), which cost more than £1,000 and to all portable and attractive items owned by the Local Authority or the school.
- 21.2 Head teachers are responsible for ensuring that: -
  - (a)Proper security is continually maintained for all buildings, furniture, plant, equipment, vehicles, stores, stocks, cash etc. under their control. They should also aim to achieve maximum utilisation of such assets in the provision of services.
  - (b)Appropriate inventory records are maintained, *in accordance with the instructions in Appendix C.*
  - (c)Surplus or obsolete materials, stores or equipment are disposed of in accordance with the Financial Procedure Rules / Scheme for Financing Schools.
- 21.3 Inventory records should be maintained using an Inventory Book, or by alternative electronic means.
- 21.4 Registers of key holders for buildings, safes etc. should be maintained. Keys should be issued to as few people as possible.
- 21.5 The Assets and Property Manager shall maintain a register of all properties held by the Authority, showing the purpose for which the property is held, the location, extent and plan reference, purchase details and the nature of the interest.
- 21.6 The Principal Lawyer, Corporate Legal Services shall arrange for the safe custody of title deeds in respect of land and properties.

### 22.0 INFORMATION SYSTEMS SECURITY

22.1 Ensuring the integrity, availability and confidentiality of data is an important matter and is subject to several legal acts (e.g. Computer Misuse Act 1990, Data Protection Act 1998, Copyright Designs and Patent Act 1988).

The Local Authority's Information Systems Security Policy must be followed, the relevant policies aimed at safeguarding information include:

- IT Security Policy
- Email Policy
- Internet Policy
- Protective Marking Policy
- Safe Information Handling Policy
- Mobile Device Policy
- Flexible working policy.
- All are available (or can be signposted to) by the Communications Team

Therefore, schools should have policies for these, and as a minimum comply to the Local Authority policies, but can be tailored to better fit schools, provided the security of information is upheld.

### 23.0 FRAUD AND CORRUPTION

23.1 The Local Authority is committed to the elimination of fraud and corruption and is determined to protect itself from such unlawful activities, whether they are attempted from within or by an outside individual, group or organisation.

The Local Authority's Anti-Fraud & Corruption Policy must be followed:

http://intranet.smbc.loc/our-council/counter-fraud.aspx

#### 24.0 AUDIT REPORTING AND ESCALATION PROTOCOL

- 24.1 The Chief Internal Auditor is responsible for ensuring the issue of audit reports within a maximum of four weeks of the completion of fieldwork and assessing that a satisfactory response is received from the School to address the recommendations. Schools are responsible for ensuring that a written satisfactory response is provided to the draft report including completing the audit action plan with details of the action to be taken, the date when it will be completed and the staff member responsible for undertaking the action. Schools should ensure that the response is provided within two weeks of the issue of the draft report. Reminders are issued after two weeks if a response has not been received.
- 24.2 Where material recommendations are not accepted or no response is received, after a further week the Chief Internal Auditor will discuss with the auditee and, if still no acceptance or response, will report to the S151: Head of Corporate Resources or his deputy.
- 24.3 If a satisfactory response is not received after referral at 24.2 above, S151 or his deputy will decide on further action. (This may involve reporting to the Principal Lawyer, Corporate Legal Services and/or Head of Education Excellence with recommendations for further action).
- 24.4 Where there are draft reports which have an outstanding satisfactory response from the school after two months the details of the review will be formally reported to Audit and Governance Committee.
- 24.5 Timescales will be accelerated where there is significant risk of material loss or error or where particularly sensitive or contentious issues are involved.
- 24.6 Principal Auditors are responsible for bringing to the attention of the Audit Manager and or Chief Internal Auditor significant audit findings and sensitive or contentious issues.
- 24.7 The Chief Internal Auditor is responsible for briefing the Head of Corporate Resources (S151) and his deputy on audit issues and findings arising from the school reviews.

- 24.8 The Head of Corporate Resources (S151), is responsible for identifying and reporting major issues to Chief Executive.
- 24.9 A report on the school audits that have been undertaken detailing the high-risk audit agreed actions is provided to the quarterly meeting of the Audit and Governance Committee.
- 24.10 The School is responsible to ensure that the final audit report is shared formally with the Governing Body.
- 24.11 Follow-up of audit recommendations will be undertaken by the Audit Team to ensure proper implementation of agreed audit actions stemming from the review particularly where major weaknesses in systems have been identified. The review of the agreed actions will take place in accordance with the Council's approach to managing the follow up of audit recommendations.

## **Appendix A - Retention of Financial Records**

It is important that records (computerised or manual) are carefully retained and systematically filed as they are required for inspection by several agencies such as Internal Audit, External Auditors the District Auditor, HMRC officials, etc.

The required MINIMUM period for the retention of financial records is CURRENT FINANCIAL YEAR PLUS THE THREE PREVIOUS FINANCIAL YEARS.

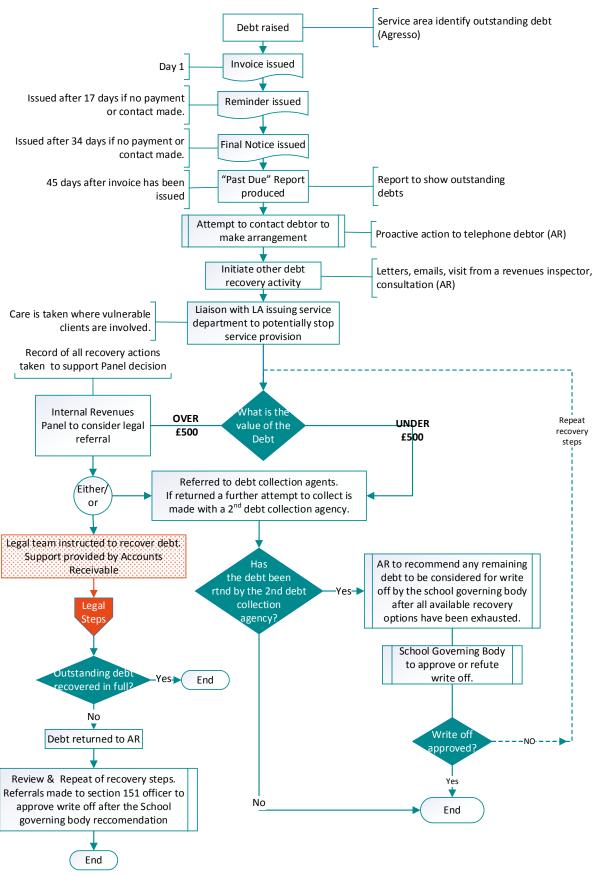
This applies to Receipts, Till Rolls, Invoices, Copy Orders, Audit Trails, School Meals and Non-Public Fund Records and Charge Card transaction logs.

The advised periods for the retention of other financial records are detailed below:

Accounts etc	Period of Retention
Sales Contracts	6 years after agreement ends
Purchasing Contracts	6 years after agreement ends
Stock Inventories	10 years
Published Accounts	Permanently
Taxation Returns	6 years
External Audit Reports	Permanently
Cheques	6 years
Bank Statements	6 years
Cash Statements	6 years
Deeds of Covenant	12 years after final payment
Primary Salaries & Wages Records	6 years
Expense Accounts	6 years
Pension Scheme Records	Permanently
Charge Card Statements	6 years
General	
Insurance Policies (Excluding Liability)	6 years after lapse
Liability Insurance Policies	Permanently / Indefinitely
Insurance Claims	6 years after settlement
Insurance Schedules	10 years
School Minutes	Permanently

Appendix B – Debt Escalation Protocol

## Accounts Receivable Debt Recovery



## **Appendix C - Inventory Instructions**

#### 1. PURPOSE

#### 2. INVENTORY RECORDS

- 2.1 The inventory should include of all items of furniture or equipment, all vehicles and all movable plant, whether provided by the Local Authority, purchased or hired by the school, or donated. Items valued at £50 or less may be ignored unless collectively they make up a substantial asset e.g. 100 chairs at £25 each; or they are individually both valuable and highly portable e.g. mobile telephones. As best practice, all individual items of value exceeding £1,000 must be included in some form of school inventory.
- 2.2 Serial numbers of equipment must be noted as this information may be very useful to the police if items are stolen. Security marking should be used to record the name of the establishment and its postcode. (Items on loan from other establishments etc. should not be marked).
- 2.3 Head Teachers must ensure that the register is kept up to date. Systems therefore should ensure that the person responsible for the inventory is kept fully informed of purchases, loans, write-offs etc.
- 2.4 Proper procedures must be established for loans of equipment, including authorisation policy, specification of finite periods of loan and written acknowledgement of loan. Loans out and items borrowed must be recorded in the sections provided at the back of the inventory book.
- 2.5 The Head Teacher must sign the inventory book to authorise write-offs, transfers and sales.
- 2.6 Head Teachers must ensure that inventories are checked at least annually. The existence of items loaned out, and those held on loan should also be checked. The annual check should be undertaken by someone other than the person responsible for the equipment on the inventory. The check must be documented as specified in the inventory book.
- 2.7 Where the Head Teacher is responsible for several establishments or offices, each with their own inventory, a master list of inventories held should be maintained.
- 2.8 Surplus, obsolete or unserviceable equipment must first be offered to other establishments or departments. If it is not required by other parts of the Local Authority, it should be sold at the best price available, in accordance with the Finance Procedure Rules. The agreed price must be paid before removal of the item.
- 2.9 Where computers are to be disposed of, IT advice must be sought in view of the implications for software licenses and data security.
- 2.10 A copy of the inventory must also be kept off-site.

## **Appendix D – Model Charge Card Policy**

Appendix A

## Application for approval to Obtaining and Operating a school charge card to

Name of School:
I hereby confirm that the Governing Body has approved the school obtaining a charge card from the Local Authority on
Signed:
Name:
Chair of Governors
Date:
For Local Authority Use Only
I hereby authorise the Governing Body of
Section 151 Officer Sefton MBC

Appendix B

## **Model Charge Card Usage Policy**

The Governing Body of XXXXXX School has agreed to obtain a charge card to be used in connection with spending of the school budget. The charge card shall only be used where it is more efficient / effective to obtain goods / services.

The charge card shall be managed and used in accordance with the Council's Financial and Contract Procedure Rules and the Schools Charge Card Procedure Manual

The charge card shall not be used to:

- procure goods / services from suppliers where the normal ordering / payment system can be utilized
- Circumvent the Council's /School's procurement rules.

The Schools shall keep appropriate records to provide a proper management trail and retain documentation in accordance with the Council's retention policy for financial records.

The charge card shall be issued in the name of the Head Teacher of School.

The charge limit shall be:

Single transaction and monthly transaction limits will be set for each card. For Nursery, Primary and Special Schools these limits will be set at £6,000 and £8,000 respectively for each card. For Secondary schools the limits will be £10,000 and £12,000 respectively

### **Administration of Charge Card**

- 1. The Head teacher must sign a declaration to confirm that he / she understands the conditions of issue and will abide by the approved policy.
- 2. Procedures for the operation of the card shall be clearly documented in the School's Finance Manual.
- 3. The card shall not be used to withdraw cash or purchase foreign currency.
- 4. The card shall be held securely on the premises and access restricted to the card holder. The PIN, password and security code shall not be recorded and / or disclosed to anybody else.
- 5. The bank shall be notified promptly of the loss / theft of the card to avoid liability for any misuse.
- 6. Charge cards usage shall be limited to transactions where there is a financial saving and evidence of this shall be retained for management purposes.
- 7. The Card Holder will be responsible for downloading monthly statements from the Natwest Cards Online web site.
- 8. Transactions on charge cards statement shall be independently checked by the Card Administrator against the transaction documentation and the reconciliation form completed for certification by the Head Teacher. Any discrepancy on the charge card statement shall be reported promptly to the Governing Body.
- 9. Due care shall be taken when using the charge card for internet and telephone transactions.
- 10. The issuing bank will not honour transactions in excess of the credit limit.
- 11. Expired charge cards shall be destroyed and reported to the Local Authority.

- 12. The bank / Local Authority shall be informed in writing to cancel the card when the Headteacher leaves or the card is no longer required. In such instances, the charge card must be destroyed and reported to the Local Authority.
- 13. The charge card shall not be used for personal use. Any misappropriate use of the card may lead to disciplinary being action and / or facilities withdrawn.
- 14. The Card holder is authorised to liaise with the bank and copies of all communication shall be retained securely in accordance with the Council's retention policy for financial documentation.
- 15. Any loyalty rewards obtained arising from the use of the charge card shall be used for the benefit of the school.

## School Charge Card – template for receipt of a charge card

naige	
SEFTON MBC	
CORPORATE RESOURCES DEPARTMENT	
CREDIT CARD RECEIPT FOR -	
I confirm that Card No. xxxx xxxx xxxx XXXX and PIN number were supplied to	
on	
Signed	
To be completed by the Cardholder and Administrator	
10 be sompleted by the Garanoider and Administrator	
I confirm receipt of Card No. xxxx xxxx xxxx XXXX and PIN number	
on	
on I commit that Thave read the contools charge out a Toocoure Manual	
dated December 2018 and agree to abide by the procedures set out.	
Cardholder Signature	
I confirm that I have read the Schools Charge Card Procedure Manual dated December 2018 and agree to	
abide by the procedures set out.	
Administrators Full Name	
Administrators Full Name	
Administrators Signature	
This receipt should be signed and returned to; Sharon Garner	
Corporate Resources Department	
Treasury and Capital Section	
2nd Floor Magdalen House	

## Appendix E Prudential Borrowing Scheme – Guidance for Schools

#### 1 Introduction

1.1 These procedures have been developed to provide clear guidelines to schools when seeking to borrow funds from the council to acquire capital assets.

## 2 What Applications will be considered?

- 2.1 Applications will only be considered for expenditure on the acquisition, creation or enhancement of assets that can be capitalised (subject to a de-minimis level) providing that it will yield benefit to the Council and services it provides for a period of more than one year for example improvements to Land and buildings, computer hardware, furniture and equipment.
- 2.2 Applications cannot be considered for assets with a capital cost /purchase price less than £10,0003 unless it is part of one large scheme where the total costs will exceed £10,000
- 2.3 In all cases, services will be required to complete an application form and demonstrate that the proposal is affordable, achievable and sustainable.
- 2.4 Applications will only be considered for projects, which have received the formal approval of the schools' Governing Body. A copy of the resolution should be enclosed with the completed application form (See Appendix 1). Applications can be submitted and considered in advance of this with signatures of the Head Teacher and Chair of the Governing Body.
- 2.5 All applications must in the first instance be submitted to the Corporate Financial Support Services, schools finance team, <a href="mailto:schools.finance@sefton.gov.uk">mailto:schools.finance@sefton.gov.uk</a>

## 3 How are the annual repayments calculated & repayments made?

- 3.1 The annual repayment cost will be calculated on an annuity basis over the operational life of the asset. The interest rate will be the Public Works Loan Board annuity rate, as at 1 October, in the year of acquisition (see Appendix 2).
- 3.2 No charge will be made in the year of acquisition and first charges would be made in August of the following year, to allow schools time to plan repayments in their budgets (see Appendix 2).
- 3.3 Schools can opt to pay principal for a part year charge in the year of purchase to reduce the overall cost to the service.
- 3.4 The principal outstanding and interest accrued to date can be repaid in full at any time throughout the life of the loan up until the final year.
- 3.5 Schools will be charged via a journal transfer that will be recorded on the AFT document received in the August following the date the loan has been agreed and each subsequent year until the loan is repaid in full.

3.6 As the Local Authority finances the capital expenditure in totality, Schools cannot use Devolved Formula Capital (DFC) for prudential borrowing repayments. Any schools that wish to use DFC should request a lower loan in the first instance with a view to financing part of the total cost of the project with DFC.

3 This figure is based on the Council's level for de minimus capital expenditure, which is subject to annual review.

#### 4.0. Conditions of the scheme

- 4.1 Repayments must be made immediately on receipt of request for payment or further interest becomes chargeable and the full balance of the loan plus interest to the end of the agreed term may become immediately payable.
- 4.2 Funding must be used for the purpose for which the application was made otherwise the full balance plus interest accrued to date will become immediately payable.
- 4.3 The level of schools prudential borrowing is no longer subject to restriction and will be assessed based on the business case provided. As a guideline however, the Local Authority will look very closely at Schools that are proposing to earmark more than 5% of their revenue budget (excluding pupil premium) to service borrowing charges.
- 4.4 The Local Authority will rigorously test each business case and schools will not be permitted to borrow beyond the useful life of the asset being acquired / enhanced as defined by the Council's accounting policies. In addition, where proposals affect the property estate they will be referred to the School Organisation team for endorsement as part of the evaluation.
- 4.5 The schools financial position including previous years closing balance, current years' budget plan and outstanding debts will be considered in the evaluation.
- 4.6 Schools must adhere to any Local Authority guidance to ensure the scheme complies with construction design and management regulations, health and safety requirements and has "landlords" approval to undertake works.
- 4.7 The Local Authority retains the right to refuse any application based on
  - (i) The Council's Treasury Management Strategy and compliance with the Prudential Code, which aims to ensure that capital investment plans, are affordable, prudent and sustainable.
  - (ii) The proposal not being in line with Education asset management objectives.
- 4.8. On all schemes over £0.250m, Schools are required to prepare a brief report to inform the Local Authority of completion of works and any matters arising.
- 4.9. Internal audit will review compliance with the conditions of the prudential borrowing scheme as part of their routine programme of school visits.

4.10 It should be noted the Council will demand repayment of the prudential borrowing in full before a maintained school converts to academy status, unless the Council agrees to renegotiate the terms of the loan.

#### 5.0. Sources of information

- 5.1 In all circumstances schools are advised to contact the Head of Corporate Resources, FAO the Treasury Management Group Accountant for advice and indicative rates.
- 5.2 On behalf of Head of Corporate Resources, the Financial Management Team will
  - Calculate the total cost and annual cost of the loan.
  - Undertake modelling to assist with decision making for example the cost of different options.
  - Provide assistance completing the application form.

## 6.0. How are schemes approved?

All applications will be reviewed in the first instance by the Treasury Management Team and the Schools Finance Team to assess against the scheme conditions. Schools Finance Team will liaise with School Organisation as appropriate. The scheme of delegation for the approval of schemes is

<=£0.100m	Head of Corporate Resources and Head of
	Education Excellence
> £0.100m <= £0.250m	Cabinet Member - Regulatory,
	Compliance and Corporate Services,
	Cabinet Member - Children, Schools and
	Safeguarding and Head of Corporate
	Resources and Head of Education
	Excellence
>= £0.250m	Cabinet

- 6.2. For schemes >= £0.250m the Treasury Management Team and Schools Finance Team will prepare a brief Cabinet Report with the recommendation.
- 6.3. The approximate timeline from the receipt of any applications through to approval is typically:

<=£0.100m	1-3 weeks
> £0.1>= £0.250m 00m	3-6 weeks
<= £0.250m	8 – 10 weeks

## Appendix 1

## **Schools Prudential Borrowing Business Case Template**

School:	
Description of project / assets to be purchased	
Justification and benefits of the project:	
Project cost in total (A)	£
Less: funds from other sources (please specify) (B)	
	£
	£
	£
Balance required from Council (A - B)	£
Expected asset life ( C )	Yrs
Length of loan (D)	Yrs
Estimated annual repayment (as advised by the Local Authority) (E)	£

School budget share (excluding pupil premium) (F)	f
% of revenue budget to be assigned to repayments (E/F)	%

Affordability: what funding / savings / reduction	ns have been identified to build the
repayments into the school's operating budget	
Will the project go ahead if this application is	1
unsuccessful?	
unsuccessiuit	
Handa han a sambina da aba Casanaira Bada	
Has it been explained to the Governing Body	
that the repayments would be unavoidable	
commitments for the term of the loan?	
Date of Governing Body Approval	
Signatu	res:
Headteacher:	Date:
<b>Chair of Governing Body</b>	Date:
<b>5</b> ,	
For Office Use Only:	
Tor office ose offig.	
Date application received:	
Date application received.	
Desision	
Decision:	
Signed:	Date:

## Appendix 2

## **Illustration of Repayments**

Purchase price	£30,000
Life of asset	5 years
Interest rate	1.67%
Date of purchase (2018/19)	1 <sup>st</sup> June 2018
Annual Charge	£6,411.00
Total Cost	£32,055.00

Financial Year	Annual Repayment £
2019/20	6,411.00
2020/21	6,411.00
2021/22	6,411.00
2022/23	6,411.00
2023/24	6,411.00
Total	32,055.00

<sup>\*\*</sup>Interest rate is based on 1 October and first charges are made in the following financial year from the year of acquisition.

## **Appendix F – Contacts**

In case of any general query on Financial Regulations please use contact details below.

Schools Finance

E-mail: nick.carbonaro@sefton.gov.uk or kevin.mcblain@sefton.gov.uk or neil.lomax@sefton.gov.uk

For advice and support with capital queries please contact:

Corporate Capital Team

E-mail: <a href="mailto:thomas.walmsley@sefton.gov.uk">thomas.walmsley@sefton.gov.uk</a> or <a href="mailto:louise.alty@sefton.gov.uk">louise.alty@sefton.gov.uk</a>

For advice with purchasing and contract compliance please contact Central Purchasing Unit

E-mail: jane.taylor1@sefton.gov.uk

For any concerns of financial irregularities please contact Internal Audit

E-mail: david.eden@sefton.gov.uk

School Forum 1 July 2019 Agenda item 8

# Notes on the National Fair Funding Conference – Manchester 22 May 2019

The Spring National Fair Funding Conference was held in Manchester on 22 May.

### Opening presentation:

## Developing and sustaining an (effective) local SEND and High Needs System-

This was the opening talk given by Ben Bryant, Director of ISOS Partnership, who have done a lot of commissioned work for the DfE on High Needs.

Ben's slides are available for information.

Key issues discussed:

ISOS have conducted work with stakeholders around sustainability in SEND and the need for LA s to be pro-active; Inclusive and reactive in High Needs.

Nationally, there is evidence of growing demand for High Needs places yet less inhouse provision, leading to much more expensive NMSS / external placements.

It is estimated that there was a £287m funding gap nationally in High Needs in 2017 and LA s were now going into a DSG deficit position largely because of High Needs overspending (average level £3.4m with some in excess of £20m!). The national funding gap on HN is Est at £1.1bn – £1.6bn deficit gap by 2021!!

What impedes LA s from managing HN expenditure? – A combination of factors – Ability to make changes is limited as funding is already committed to current service provision. Difficult to shift placement emphasis. Once a commitment to high cost provision is made, children remain there for some years, so inability to change costs. Also, risks from parental choice and increasing tribunal cases challenging LA decisions. Increasing cases are being lost nationally.

Impact of the High Needs reforms has seen a huge increase in demand for services through EHCPs. Also, the increase in the age range 19-25 and growing numbers of Young People staying on in education.

Changing and increasingly complex needs are being identified. Changes in the curriculum and accountability are adding to cost.

It is now estimated that extra funding by Govt would never be enough to meet the growing needs for specialist High Needs provision. Given funding restrictions, it is

very difficult for LA s to develop new provision in advance of need and many LA s are already full to capacity in their own provision.

## Possible considerations:

Making stakeholder views valued. Building ownership of HN issues. Broadening participation in High Needs. Closer working partnerships with stakeholders e.g Health - encouraging effective practice / sharing needs/issues locally for greater understanding. Supporting young people's needs and preparation for adulthood. Discuss with Young People their needs. Parent/Carer forum groups useful. Give parents a role to play – greater involvement in developing strategy. Building inclusive capacity/Joint commissioning/Developing responsive, flexible and effective local provision.

Having a clear sense of the High Needs offer of support at different levels is important e.g Autism; Mental Health etc Ensure key decision makers are included. Developing local offer clearly is important – explain things easily; roles; responsibilities; pathways. Improve quality of EHCPs to avoid issues later.

Try to build more in-house capacity. Layout expectations of schools in HN provision. Need for consistency of funding and treatment across schools. Targeting inclusive support. Having a range of services to support schools when they reach a tipping point.

Increase resourced provision to relieve pressures on mainstream schools and having availability of support for all needs. Have discussions with colleges; employers with regard to work experience for HN students making for an inclusive diverse workforce. Finance should be part of any core strategy looking at practice; trends and strategies.

## 6 Seminars/workshops held (see slides)

- What do we know about (effective) local systems of alternative provision and support for inclusion – Ben Bryant (ISOS Partnership)
- Dedicated Schools Grant Recovery Plan DfE
- Early Years Funding Workshop Reena Kholi Manchester City Council
- Schools Forum history and context Jonathan Lewis Cambridgeshire & Peterborough
- Defusing the High Needs Funding Timebomb Julie Cordiner CIPFA Accountant
- Affordable Schools facing the financial challenges Andrew Minall Hampshire County Council

Seminars I attended:

### **Dedicated Schools Grant Recovery Plan wef 2018/19:**

New formal requirement of LA s to produce a recovery plan to the DfE if they overspend central DSG by more than 1% of their total DSG (doesn't include schools balances). Schools Forum to be informed and consulted on the plans.

Template to complete - with reasons for overspending and details of pressures along with a 3-year plan to come out of deficit. Projects to be identified to reduce spending. Plans will show budget pressures and reviews of services

Plans/templates completed and signed off by Head of Finance by 30.6.19 and will be considered by the DfE July/Aug and agreed by September. Plans reviewed periodically.

DfE may share plans/best practice with LA s arising from the process.

#### Other DfE Issues mentioned:

Spending Review due in the Autumn - may be delayed due to Brexit – 19/20 funding may be rolled over into 2020/21? Unpredictable situation.

Depts gathering their funding requests to the Treasury. Ministers have publicly recognised High Needs pressures, in particular Post 16 and 19-25-year-old rising costs.

\*Call to Evidence set up on High Needs – particularly around mainstream schools. Closes 1 July 2019. Could direct future funding changes? Stakeholders urged to respond to the questions.

## **Early Years Funding Workshop – Manchester City Council**

Discussions around the EY Funding regime particularly around using the headcount/census data each January for the 2-Year-Old Offer which is not considered the best time for data. Jan census does not pick up the high Spring intake of 2 Year olds. The 2-year-old attendance differs from 3-4 year olds and this causes problems with funding to LA s.

LA s not pleased at the way the DfE clawback of funding is made for retrospective changes in numbers between census dates year on year. Difficult to calculate, though not impossible. Doesn't help with funding plans. DfE not likely to change this methodology any time soon!!

Discussion around the Maintained Nursery Schools Transitional funding (£60m) extended to Aug 2020. Study of MNS shows a big diversity of provision; size; and cost per pupil. No guarantees of ongoing funding beyond 2020. Many LA s are awaiting the Spending Review to see what happens. DfE aware there is wide political support for MNS s. Some LA s have merged their MNSs into Nursery

classes or co located them with Primary Schools; some have closed; some have federated. No further updates so far.

## **Defusing the High Needs Timebomb -**

A very interesting and informative workshop by a former Cipfa Accountant and Children's Services Director, now an Education Funding Specialist – Julie Cordiner (some of her papers are online and available for access).

Funding issues on High Needs caused by a number of reasons:

Issues with the HN formula allocations-

- Funding reforms on High Needs unfair distributions to start with New National Formula is not responsive of changing needs. The Historic element of the HN formula is fixed in cash terms.
- The Population Factor is not a good representation, and not responsive enough to the size of the population of children with complex high needs relative to real population change. Funding is not therefore allocated according to need! Children who are in a placement are there for a long time.
- Formula takes little account of changes due to inflation on place costs; deprivation factors; Increasing external fees; awareness of changing diagnosis of need; Informed parents seeking choices; growing legal challenges etc Not sensitive to these changes.
- Need for more sensitivity to increases in the SEND population with more complex needs
- Poor policy decisions the effect of austerity on LA s not considered; The disincentives to inclusion; The DfE promoting Special Free Schools offering Capital funding, but little focus on early intervention.
- Nationally EHCPs up 35% in 5 years / 24% more pupils in Special Schools /Colleges / 67% increase in Permanent Exclusions.
- Growing numbers of LA s seeking support from Schools Block funding up to or above 0.5% of Schools Block funding. – 40% dis-applications turned down by the DfE adding further pressures on funding.

### Some key questions:

What will come out of the spending review?

Will it recognise the transfers of funding from Schools to the High Needs Block?

Will there be greater accountability of schools around the number of permanent exclusions around outcomes? Performance tables?

What will be the impact of new Special Free Schools?

Some schools are threatening to close their Resourced Provision/SEN Units due to funding. This will reduce infrastructure necessary to relieve pressure!

There has been a Cross-Party select committee considering High Needs issues looking at the impact of the Reforms; the trends in EHCP s; Parental views navigating the system; School views on the impact of SEND on budgets. A look at tribunals (87% won by the appellants). They have been looking at the off-rolling and exclusion of pupils with SEND. They have been looking at health issues around pupils with SEND. The LA role and conflict of interest as Provider and decision maker for placements.

It's felt that LA should have levers to funding to be able more freely to incentivise to get greater inclusion for SEND pupils.

The DfE has 3 aims:

Greater LA collaboration to secure greater efficiency in delivery of HN services.

A Strategic Plan for HN provision

Better Value for Money from Special schools and other institutions

(however, no efficiency measures of VFM for special schools!)

### Considerations

SEND needs strong leadership – clear vision of the service and culture, managing expectations; encouragement; transparency

Understanding of thresholds

Good funding arrangements

Good pattern of provision and transition

There is some conflict between professionals as to diagnoses and this feeds into parental choice. Parents must be kept open minded throughout the placement process.

Inclusion must be incentivised internally to demonstrate the in-house offer is as good as anything available externally, with good outcomes.

Schools must be challenged to ensure they are using their notional HN funding to best effect.

There must be a good level of support for inclusion/infrastructure

Consider having more Resourced 'middle level' units. Review mix of provision.

Have walkthrough case sessions with professionals

Finance/SEND - Look at trends; data; and forecasts; Look at performance.

Challenge schools on exclusions – commission earlier interventions

Engage with schools to achieve cost effective support

Have wide understanding of the High Needs funding system

Ensure school staff and governors are trained to understand the range of pupils needs and the support required to make progress.

Think differently about budget uses – target funding weighted according to needs Get Health on board.

Examine the notional funding for HN in the formula

Have negotiated top-ups. Consider range of school costs - Fixed / Marginal / Stepped – more streamlined funding

Identify why or how waste/inefficiency may occur / What can be done to improve this? / What are the risks to spending? / Expected impact of making a change to funding.

## Recommended reading:

**EEF Toolkit** 

**Sutton Trust** 

SEND Gateway – reviewing leadership in SEND

DfE research 2017

Kevin McBlain

May 2019

